



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



Harvard College Library

FROM



3 2044 097 058 077

Amey P. Lothrop
Oct. 1883

FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN:

ADAPTED TO THE

LATIN GRAMMARS

OF

ALLEN AND GREENOUGH, ANDREWS AND STODDARD, BARTHOLOMEW,
BULLIONS AND MORRIS, CHASE AND STUART,
GILDERSLEEVE, AND HARKNESS,

AND PREPARED AS AN

INTRODUCTION TO CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES
ON THE GALLIC WAR.

BY

ELISHA JONES, M. A.,

ASSOCIATE PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN,
AND AUTHOR OF

"EXERCISES IN GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION" AND "LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION."

CHICAGO:

S. C. GRIGGS AND COMPANY.

1883.

1. Aug 7 915. 83. 465



Mrs. Algernon Coolidge

COPYRIGHT, 1877.
By S. C. GRIGGS AND COMPANY.

UNIVERSITY PRESS: JOHN WILSON & SON
CAMBRIDGE.

PREFACE.

THESE Lessons are intended as a practical drill-book for the beginner in Latin. They aim to make him familiar with the ordinary Latin inflections and the simpler principles of Latin syntax ; to teach him as many words and expressions from Cæsar's Commentaries as he can learn with profit, and thus prepare him for the successful study of that work.

References are made to six of our best Latin grammars, with any one of which the book may be used. In the part devoted to inflection, the learner's attention is directed, as far as thought practicable, to the elements of words declined and conjugated, — to stems, endings, signs, and connecting vowels. The root and formation of stems are not referred to ; these subjects belong more properly to a later stage of the study. In syntax, the principal rules only are introduced, and these are illustrated by numerous examples. Of the latter, translations are given which the learner may imitate in rendering the parallel exercises that follow ; these exercises are taken chiefly from the Commentaries and accompanied by explanatory notes. English exercises to be turned into Latin are also added ; these are so formed that the Latin sentences immediately preceding furnish models for their construction.

A few pages of fables and selections from early Roman history, together with the necessary annotations, follow the lessons. Complete vocabularies are added ; in the Latin-English part, such derivations of Latin words as can be most readily understood are given, and also some English derivatives. Of these others will suggest themselves. With neither, however, should the mind of the beginner be much burdened. Their main use at this time is to aid him in fixing the meanings of words. *The chief work of the first year in Latin is to master the inflections and build up a vocabulary.*

The order of the grammars has not been followed. The verb is introduced early and made to alternate with the declensions, so as to give greater variety to the character of the sentences. No effort has been made to adapt the length of the lessons to the capacity of all classes ; such an attempt would be futile. It will often be found necessary to devote two or more recitations to a single lesson. Some teachers may think it expedient to omit a few sentences from many of the exercises. To insure a good preparation for Cæsar, however, nothing should be omitted. It is believed that for classes in general the book contains matter sufficient for a year's labor.

The use of blackboards sufficiently extensive for an entire class cannot be too urgently recommended. The practice of requiring inflections and translations to be written *every day* upon the blackboard, and subjected to the criticism of the class, is most excellent. It not only adds great interest to the recitation, but also secures an accuracy and readiness which cannot be as easily attained, perhaps, by any other means.

The plan of the book was formed for the most part during a seven years' experience with beginners. It does not seem to me

necessary to give a list of the introductory books, grammars, editions of Cæsar, and lexicons — American, English, and German — which have been consulted in its preparation. Some things which appear to be common property have been adopted without credit. I may here express my sincere thanks to kind friends for encouragement and practical suggestions; to the University Press of Cambridge for great patience and pains in securing typographical excellence; and especially to my publishers, Messrs. S. C. Griggs & Co. of Chicago, for sparing no expense to produce a school-book unsurpassed in mechanical execution.

These Lessons are offered to the public with much hesitation, but with the hope that they may prove serviceable to some teachers and beginners.

ELISHA JONES.

UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN, August, 1877.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
ABBREVIATIONS	xii
INTRODUCTORY PRINCIPLES AND DEFINITIONS	1
LESSON I. — NOUNS : FIRST DECLENSION	3
LESSON II. — NOUNS : FIRST DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS	4
Declension of <i>deš</i> and <i>filä</i> .	
LESSON III. — NOUNS : SECOND DECLENSION	6
Nouns in <i>itis</i> ; Gender.	
LESSON IV. — NOUNS : SECOND DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS	7
Nouns in <i>r</i> and <i>um</i> . — Prepositions used with the Ablative.	
LESSON V. — NOUNS : SECOND DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS	9
Genitive Singular of Nouns in <i>itis</i> or <i>itum</i> ; Vocative of <i>filitis</i> and proper names in <i>itis</i> ; Declension of <i>detis</i> . — Use of <i>in</i> and <i>sub</i> .	
LESSON VI. — ADJECTIVES : FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS	11
Declension and Agreement of Adjectives.	
LESSON VII. — ADJECTIVES : FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (continued)	12
Genitive in <i>itis</i> and Dative in <i>i</i> .	
LESSON VIII. — ADDITIONAL EXERCISES. — APPPOSITION	14
LESSON IX. — VERBS : PRELIMINARY DEFINITIONS	15
LESSON X. — VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION	16
Personal Endings of the Active Voice; Present Stem; Present Indicative Active of <i>ämō</i> .	
LESSON XI. — THE SIMPLE SENTENCE	18
Subject Nominative. — Agreement of Verb. — Direct Object.	
LESSON XII. — VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION (continued)	19
Imperfect and Future Indicative Active of <i>ämō</i> .	
LESSON XIII. — MODIFIERS OF THE SUBJECT AND PREDICATE; DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT; GENITIVE WITH NOUNS	21
LESSON XIV. — VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION; PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT TENSES; THE PERFECT STEM	23
LESSON XV. — VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION : IMPERATIVE MOOD; USE OF THE IMPERATIVE	25
LESSON XVI. — VERBS : INFINITIVES, PARTICIPLES, GERUND, AND SUPINE	26

LESSON XVII. — USE OF THE INFINITIVE	27
Infinitive as Object; Subject of the Infinitive.	
LESSON XVIII. — GENERAL EXERCISE. ABLATIVE OF MEANS	29
LESSON XIX. — THIRD DECLENSION: NOUNS	31
LESSON XX. — THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>)	32
LESSON XXI. — THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>)	33
Two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing.	
LESSON XXII. — THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>)	35
LESSON XXIII. — THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>)	36
LESSON XXIV. — CONJUGATION OF THE VERB SUM	38
LESSON XXV. — PREDICATE NOUN AND ADJECTIVE	38
LESSON XXVI. — THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	40
LESSON XXVII. — COMPOUNDS OF SUM. — DATIVE WITH COM- POUNDS	41
LESSON XXVIII. — CONJUGATION OF POSSUM. — USE OF THE INFINITIVE	43
Infinitive without Subject Accusative.	
LESSON XXIX. — SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD OF AMO	44
LESSON XXX. — REVIEW OF AMO. — TWO ACCUSATIVES	46
LESSON XXXI. — PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO	48
Definitions and Personal Endings of the Passive Voice.	
LESSON XXXII. — PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO (<i>continued</i>)	49
LESSON XXXIII. — PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO (<i>continued</i>)	51
LESSON XXXIV. — SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE OF AMO	52
LESSON XXXV. — DEPONENT VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION	53
LESSON XXXVI. — ABLATIVE OF CAUSE. — COMPLEX AND COM- POUND SENTENCES	55
LESSON XXXVII. — ADJECTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION	56
LESSON XXXVIII. — ADJECTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION (<i>con- tinued</i>)	58
LESSON XXXIX. — COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES	59
Declension of Comparatives.	
LESSON XL. — COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (<i>continued</i>)	61
LESSON XLI. — DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES	62
LESSON XLII. — ADVERBS	64
Definition; Derivation; Classification; Syntax.	
LESSON XLIII. — VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE	66
LESSON XLIV. — ADDITIONAL EXERCISES	67
Accusative of Time.	

LESSON XLV. — VERBS : SECOND CONJUGATION : PASSIVE VOICE	69
LESSON XLVI. — DEPONENT VERBS : SECOND CONJUGATION	70
LESSON XLVII. — FOURTH DECLENSION	72
Declension of <i>dōmūs</i> .	
LESSON XLVIII. — FIFTH DECLENSION	73
LESSON XLIX. — VERBS : THIRD CONJUGATION : ACTIVE VOICE	74
LESSON L. — VERBS : THIRD CONJUGATION : PASSIVE VOICE	76
LESSON LI. — VERBS : FOURTH CONJUGATION : ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICES	78
LESSON LII. — THIRD CONJUGATION : VERBS IN IO . . .	79
LESSON LIII. — DEPONENT VERBS : THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS	80
Ablative with certain Deponents.	
LESSON LIV. — GENERAL EXERCISE : PLACE	82
Place to which ; Place at or in which ; Place from which.	
LESSON LV. — NUMERALS. — EXTENT IN SPACE	84
LESSON LVI. — COMPOUND NOUNS. — ABLATIVE OF TIME . .	86
LESSON LVII. — PRONOUNS : PERSONAL, POSSESSIVE, AND RE- FLEXIVE	87
LESSON LVIII. — PRONOUNS (<i>continued</i>) : DEMONSTRATIVE . .	89
LESSON LIX. — PRONOUNS (<i>continued</i>) : RELATIVE	90
Declension ; Agreement.	
LESSON LX. — PRONOUNS (<i>continued</i>) : INTERROGATIVE AND IN- DEFINITE	92
Declension of <i>aliquis</i> .	
LESSON LXI. — CONJUNCTIONS	93
LESSON LXII. — CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES	95
LESSON LXIII. — PARTICIPLES	96
Definitions ; Distinctions of Tense ; Used for a Subordinate Clause.	
LESSON LXIV. — ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE	98
LESSON LXV. — IRREGULAR VERBS : FERŌ	100
LESSON LXVI. — COMPOUNDS OF FERŌ. — ABLATIVE OF SPECI- FICATION	101
LESSON LXVII. — IRREGULAR VERBS (<i>continued</i>) : VOLO AND ITS COMPOUNDS	103
LESSON LXVIII. — IRREGULAR VERBS (<i>continued</i>) : EO AND FIO	105
LESSON LXIX. — DEFECTIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS . . .	106
Infinitive as Subject.	
LESSON LXX. — THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS. — DATIVE OF AGENT	108

LESSON LXXI. — USE OF THE DATIVE	110
Dative with Intransitive Verbs.	
LESSON LXXII. — USE OF THE ABLATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE	112
Ablative with Comparatives. — Subjunctive expressing a Wish or Command.	
LESSON LXXIII. — SEQUENCE OF TENSES. — SUBJUNCTIVE IN FINAL CLAUSES	114
LESSON LXXIV. — USE OF THE DATIVE (<i>continued</i>)	116
Dative of the Person possessing; Two Datives.	
LESSON LXXV. — SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES	118
LESSON LXXVI. — USE OF THE GENITIVE	120
Genitive with Adjectives; Genitive in Predicate; Genitive with certain Verbs.	
LESSON LXXVII. — CONDITIONAL SENTENCES	122
LESSON LXXVIII. — USE OF THE ABLATIVE	124
Ablative expressing Measure of Difference; Ablative of Quality.	
LESSON LXXIX. — CONCESSIVE CLAUSES	126
LESSON LXXX. — USE OF THE ABLATIVE (<i>continued</i>)	128
Ablative of Price; Ablative of Distance; Ablative with Adjectives.	
LESSON LXXXI. — CAUSAL CLAUSES	130
LESSON LXXXII. — TEMPORAL CLAUSES	132
LESSON LXXXIII. — SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS	134
LESSON LXXXIV. — ORATIO OBLIQUA. — INDIRECT DISCOURSE	136
LESSON LXXXV. — INDIRECT DISCOURSE (<i>continued</i>)	138
LESSON LXXXVI. — INDIRECT DISCOURSE (<i>continued</i>)	139
LESSON LXXXVII. — THE GERUND	140
LESSON LXXXVIII. — THE GERUNDIVE	142
LESSON LXXXIX. — THE SUPINE	144
LESSON XC. — THE ROMAN CALENDAR. — ABBREVIATIONS	146
LESSON XCI. — GENERAL EXERCISE	148
LESSON XCII. — GENERAL EXERCISE	150
SELECTIONS FOR READING.	
I. FABLES	153
II. STORIES FROM EARLY ROMAN HISTORY	156
GENERAL VOCABULARY.	
I. LATIN-ENGLISH	167
II. ENGLISH-LATIN	211

ABBREVIATIONS.

A. & G., Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar, revised edition.	indecl., indeclinable.
A. & S., Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar.	indef., indefinite.
abl., ablative.	interrog., interrogative.
acc., accusative.	lit., literal, literally.
act., active.	LN., Lesson.
adj., adjective.	m., masculine.
B., Bartholomew's Latin Grammar.	n., neuter.
B. & M., Bullions and Morris's Latin Grammar.	num., numeral.
C., Chase's Latin Grammar.	part., participle.
cf., <i>confer</i> , compare.	pass., passive.
comp., comparative.	perf., perfect.
conj., conjunction.	pers., person.
dat., dative.	pl., plural.
dem., demonstrative.	poss., possessive.
dep., deponent.	prep., preposition.
Ex., Example.	pres., present.
f., feminine.	pron., pronoun.
fr., from.	Ref., Reference.
G., Gildersleeve's Latin Grammar.	rel., relative.
gen., genitive.	sc., <i>scilicet</i> , understand.
H., Harkness's Latin Grammar, revised edition of 1881.	sing., singular.
ind., indicative.	subst., substantive.
	voc., vocative.
	VY., Vocabulary.
	w., with.

N. B. — The different sections of this book are marked by italicized numerals. The numerals in the notes printed thus (4) refer to such sections.

References to the revised edition of Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar are now given in the body of the book.

The references to the Grammars of Harkness and Gildersleeve have been adapted to the latest editions, and references have been added to Chase and Stuart's Latin Grammar.

INTRODUCTORY PRINCIPLES AND DEFINITIONS.

THE following numerals and letters refer to such portions of the grammar as are to be committed to memory. When two are joined by a dash the intermediate sections or paragraphs are also included: e. g. 2-4 or *a-c* signifies that the parts designated by 2, 3, and 4, or by *a*, *b*, and *c* are to be committed to memory. Only the coarse print is to be learned unless a special reference is made to the fine.

1. Alphabet. A. & G. 1; 2: A. & S. 2, 1; 3, 1, 2; 4: B. 3-10, *w. fine print* under 6 and 7: B. & M. 3; 5; 6; 7: G. 1; 2; 6: H. 2-4, *w. fine print* under 3 and 4: C. 1, 2.

2. Pronunciation and Syllables. (a) *Roman Method.* A. & G. 14, *a-d*; 16, N. B.: B. 11-15; 16-21: G. 3; 4; 7; 8; 9: H. 5-8: C. 3, I.; 4; 5.

(b) *English Method.* A. & G. 17, *a-d*, and NOTE: A. & S. 7-12, *w. fine print*; 17-23: B. 377, *the whole*: B. & M. 11; 12; 13, 1-6: H. 9-14, *w. fine print*: C. 3, II.; 5.

(c) *Continental Method.* A. & S. 6; 17-23: B. & M. 14, 1-5; 13, 1-6: H. 15: C. 3, III.; 5.

3. Quantity. A. & G. 18, *a-e*, and N. B.: A. & S. 5, 1; 13, 1-6, *w. fine print*: B. 12, *a-c*: B. & M. 8; 16-19: G. 2, 2; 10-13, REMARK 1: H. 16, I.-III., and NOTES 2-4: C. 7; 8.

4. Accent. A. & G. 19, *a-c*, *w. Def.*: A. & S. 14, 4, 5; 15, 1, 2; 16, 1-3: B. 22-25: B. & M. 20, *w. fine print*: G. 14: H. 17; 18: C. 9; 11.

5. Parts of Speech and Inflection. A. & G. 20; 21; 25, *a-k*; 26; 27: A. & S. *all of* 24-26: B. 26-33; 34-40; 115: B. & M. 24; 25, 1, 2; 26, 1, 2, *Obs.* 1-2; 27-30: G. 15-17, *the whole*: H. 37-40: C. 12.

6. Gender. A. & G. 28, *a, c*; 29; 30: A. & S. 27-30; 33; 34, 1-4: B. 116-118, I-III.: B. & M. 32-35: G. 18; 19, I.-III.; 20, 1-3: H. 41; 42, I., II.: C. 13.

7. Person, Number, and Case. A. & G. 31, *a-h*, and NOTE : A. & S. 35-37, 1-6 : B. 119-120, *w. fine print* : B. & M. 31 ; 42, 4. Case ; 43, *w. fine print* : G. 21-24 : H. 44 ; 45, *w. fine print* : C. 14.

8. Declension. A. & G. 32, *a, b* ; 33, *a-g* : A. & S. 38 ; 39, I. ; 40, 2-10 : B. 121 ; 122, REM. 1-5 ; 123 : B. & M. 44-46, *w. fine print* ; 47 ; 50, Dec. I. : G. 25-26, *the whole* : H. 46, *w. fine print* ; 47, with NOTE 3 : C. 15 ; 17.

Note.

The division of the above introductory matter into suitable lessons is left to the teacher. He may find it necessary at first to go over each lesson in advance with the class and point out the portions designated. The following suggestion is offered. Each definition should be made practical by application. E. g., as soon as the learner has committed to memory the portions of grammar referred to under "**1. Alphabet**," he should turn to "**LESSON I.**" and classify the letters of the Latin words there found. After learning "**2**," he should pronounce the same letters in accordance with the rules under "**2**," and divide the words which they form into syllables. *Learn thoroughly ; review often ; use the blackboard.*

FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN.

LESSON I.

NOUNS : FIRST DECLENSION.

9. Learn the *declension* of the model noun, the *stem* and *case-endings*, the *meaning* of each case, and the *rule of gender* for nouns of the First Declension. A. & G. NOTE, 35; 36, c: A. & S. 41; 39, I.; 40, 2-10: B. 121; 123; 124: B. & M. 46; 48, First; 51; 53: G. 24; 27, REMARK 2; 28: H. 46, 1; 48, 1, 2, 4: C. 19; 18, I.

10. The learner should make the words of the Vocabularies so familiar that when the Latin is pronounced, he can give promptly the English equivalent, or when the English is pronounced, he can give promptly the Latin equivalent. Not only the Nominative, but also the *Genitive* and *Gender* of each Latin noun should always be learned.

VOCABULARY.

causă, ae, ¹ f. ²	cause, reason.
Gĕnăvă, ae, f.	Geneva. ³
glōriă, ae, f.	glory.
linguă, ae, f.	tongue, language.
mĕmōriă, ae, f.	memory.
rîpă, ae, f.	bank (of a stream).
viă, ae, f.	way, road.

¹ *ae* is the case-ending of the Genitive. To form the Genitive of *causă*, substitute *ae* for final *ă*: e. g. Nom. *causă*, Gen. *causae*.

² In the Vocabularies, *f.* stands for *feminine gender*, *m.* for *masculine*, and *n.* for *neuter*.

³ For a fuller description of Proper Names given in the special Vocabularies, see Vocabulary at end of the book.

N. B. Careful attention should be given to the pronunciation of each syllable; the rules for *quantity* and *accent* will need to be called to mind very often. Remember that *the final syllable of a Latin word is never accented*.

Pronounce; translate; decline and describe¹ each word.

1. Causă.² 2. Glōriărŭm.³ 3. Rīpae. 4. Linguā.⁴
5. Mēmōriă.⁵ 6. Linguās. 7. Viā. 8. Rīpās. 9. Mēmōriae. 10. Glōriae. 11. Causās. 12. Viām. 13. Mēmōriās. 14. Viā. 15. Glōriām. 16. Linguārŭm. 17. Causīs.
18. Rīpā. 19. Gēnāvae.⁶

Write in Latin.

1. Of a² cause. 2. Of the causes. 3. With glory.
4. For glory. 5. With tongues. 6. In the language.
7. O Memory. 8. In memory. 9. Of the banks. 10. By the way.

Notes and Questions.

¹ To describe a noun is to tell its case, number, and gender, its stem and case-ending (termination).

² The Latin language has no article. In translating Latin nouns into English, *a*, *an*, or *the* may be supplied according to the sense. E. g. causă may be rendered *a cause*, *the cause*, or simply *cause*.

³ Which syllable of glōriărŭm is accented? Why? (4) — *Numerals printed thus (4) refer to sections of this book.*

⁴ What is the quantity of the penult of linguā? Why? (3)

⁵ The Ablative may often be rendered by the preposition *in* and the noun: e. g. mēmōriă, *in memory*; linguā, *in the language*.

⁶ Locative Case; translate by the preposition *at* or *in* and the noun: e. g. Rōmae, *at Rome*, or *in Rome*.



LESSON II.

NOUNS: FIRST DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS.

11. Declension of deă and filiă. A. & G. 36, e; A. & S. 43, 2, *last part*: B. 124, REM. 1: B. & M. 57: G. 27, REMARK 3: H. 49, 4: C. 19, 6.

12. Use of Prepositions. A. & G. 260 : A. & S. 235 : B. 329,
RULE LXXX. : B. & M. 981 : G. 417 : H. 432 : C. 131.

VOCABULARY.

<i>ād</i> , prep. w. acc. ¹	<i>to</i> .
<i>angustiae</i> , ² <i>ārum</i> , f.	<i>narrow pass</i> .
<i>circū</i> , prep. w. acc.	<i>around</i> .
<i>deā</i> , ae, f.	<i>goddess</i> .
<i>fi</i> l <i>ī</i> a, ae, f.	<i>daughter</i> .
<i>Mātrōnā</i> , ae, m.	<i>the Marne</i> .
<i>pēr</i> , prep. w. acc.	<i>through</i> .
<i>prōvinciā</i> , ae, f.	<i>province</i> .
<i>silvā</i> , ae, f.	<i>forest</i> .
<i>trans</i> , prep. w. acc.	<i>across</i> .

¹ "prep. w. acc." signifies that *ād* is a preposition used with the Accusative.

² *angustiae* is rarely used in the singular. Notice that it is equivalent to two English words, *narrow*, an adjective, and *pass*, a noun.

Pronounce; translate; decline and describe each noun.

1. Ad rīpām.¹ 2. Ad rīpām Matrōnae.² 3. Trans Matrōnām. 4. Deā.³ 5. Deae. 6. Deārūm. 7. Deābūs. 8. Trans viām. 9. Pēr angustias.⁴ 10. Pēr silvās. 11. Pēr prōvinciām. 12. Circū Gēnāvām. 13. Silvārūm. 14. In silvis.⁵ 15. Ad filiās deārūm.

Write in Latin.

1. The daughter. 2. A daughter. 3. O daughter. 4. To the daughter of a goddess. 5. To⁶ the Marne. 6. To⁶ the banks of the Marne. 7. For the daughters. 8. Through the provinces. 9. Through the forest. 10. In⁵ the forest. 11. In⁷ the memory of the daughters.

Notes and Questions.

¹ When a noun is governed by a preposition, give the rule referred to under 12.

² Give the rule for gender of *Matrōnā*. (6)

³ See LN. I., NOTE 2.

⁴ What is the quantity of the penult of *angustias*? Why? (3) Which syllable then has the accent? (4)

⁵ See LN. V., 19 and VY. Which cases of the First Declension are alike in the singular? Which in the plural? What is the difference between *silvā* and *silvā*? In Latin the prep. *in* usually precedes the place *where*.

⁶ Translate by the proper preposition.

⁷ See LN. I., NOTE 5.



LESSON III.

NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION.

13. Nouns in ūs. A. & G. NOTE, 38, *servūs*; 40, *a*: A. & S. 46, *dōmīnūs*: B. 126; 127, *dōmīnūs*, REM. 4: B. & M. 59; 61, *dōmīnūs*: G. 29, *hortūs*, REMARK 4: H. 51, *servūs*, 1, 2, 1)–3), 8: C. 21 (*dōmīnūs*), 1; 18, II.

14. Gender. A. & G. 39: A. & S. 46: B. 127, REM. 3: B. & M. 71: G. 30: H. 51: C. 21; 24.

VOCABULARY.

<i>antē</i> , prep. w. acc.	<i>before</i> .
<i>amicitiā</i> , ae, f.	<i>friendship</i> .
<i>amicūs</i> , ī, m.	<i>friend</i> .
<i>carrūs</i> , ī, m.	<i>cart, wagon</i> .
<i>contrā</i> , prep. w. acc.	<i>against</i> .
<i>Germānī</i> , ōrūm, m.	<i>the Germans</i> .
<i>lēgātūs</i> , ī, m.	<i>legate, lieutenant</i> .
<i>nūmērūs</i> , ī, m.	<i>number</i> .
<i>oculūs</i> , ī, m.	<i>eye</i> .
<i>pōpūlūs</i> , ī, m.	<i>people</i> .
<i>Rhēnūs</i> , ī, m.	<i>the Rhine</i> .
<i>Rhōdānūs</i> , ī, m.	<i>the Rhone</i> .

Pronounce; translate; decline and describe each noun.

1. Pōpūlī.¹
2. Pōpūlē.
3. Pōpūlīs.
4. Amicitīā pōpūlī.
5. Antē oculōs pōpūlī.
6. Nūmērūs carrōrūm.
7. Nūmēr-

rūs Germānōrūm. 8. Nūmērūs āmicōrūm. 9. Nūmērūs filiārūm. 10. Filiā lēgātī.² 11. Amicō pōpūli. 12. Contrā āmicūm pōpūli. 13. Contrā lēgātōs pōpūli. 14. Trans Rhōdānūm. 15. Pōpūli³ āmicīs. 16. Ad Germānōs.

Write in Latin.

1. Of a friend. 2. To a friend. 3. O friend. 4. Against a friend. 5. Of friends. 6. The friends of the Germans. 7. Against the friends of the Germans. 8. Before the eyes of the Germans. 9. Across the Rhine. 10. Before the lieutenant's² eyes. 11. The friendship of the Germans.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What is the stem of *pōpūli*? What are the case-endings of the Second Declension? Which cases are alike in the singular? Which in the plural? Which cases are like the same cases of the First Declension? What is the rule of gender for the Second Declension? (14) What is the rule of gender for the First Declension? What are the general rules for gender? (6)

² The Latin Genitive is often equivalent to the English possessive case: *filiā lēgātī* is best rendered *the lieutenant's daughter*.

³ The Genitive usually stands after the noun which it limits, but often before it. In the latter case the Genitive is made emphatic: e. g., *filiā āmicī*, *the friend's daughter*; but *āmicī filiā*, *the friend's daughter*.



LESSON IV.

NOUNS : SECOND DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS.

15. Nouns in *r* and *um*. A. & G. 38: A. & S. 46: B. 127, a, b, REM. 1, 2: B. & M. 60; 61; 63: G. 29; 31: H. 51, 2, 3)–6), 4, 1): C. 21, 1, 2; 22.

16. Prepositions used with the Ablative. A. & G. 152, b: A. & S. 241: B. 178: B. & M. 470: G. 418: H. 434: C. 186.

N. B. The list of prepositions used with the Ablative should be committed to memory.

VOCABULARY.

ā, āb, ¹ prep. w. abl.	<i>from, by.</i>
āgēr, āgrī, m.	<i>field, territory.</i>
bellūm, i, n.	<i>war.</i>
cūm, prep. w. abl.	<i>with.</i>
ē, ex, ¹ prep. w. abl.	<i>out of.</i>
frūmentūm, i, n.	<i>corn.</i>
gēnēr, gēnērī, m.	<i>son-in-law.</i>
Helvētīi, ōrum, m.	<i>the Helvetii.</i>
puēr, puērī, m.	<i>boy.</i>
regnūm, i, n.	<i>sovereignty, kingdom.</i>
sīnē, prep. w. abl.	<i>without.</i>
templūm, i, n.	<i>temple.</i>
vīr, vīrī, m.	<i>man.</i>

¹ **ā** and **ē** are used only before words beginning with a consonant; **āb** and **ex** before either a vowel or consonant.

Pronounce; translate; parse the nouns governed by prepositions.

1. Puērī,² puērōrūm.
2. Gēnērō, gēnērīs.
3. Agrī Helvētiōrūm.
4. Cūm vīrīs.
5. Sīnē vīrīs.
6. Ex templō.³
7. Cūm Helvētiīs.
8. Sīnē regnō.
9. Sīnē frūmentō.⁴
10. Bellūm cūm Germānīs.
11. Ex prōvinciā.
12. Ab Helvētiīs.
13. Pēr agrōs Helvētiōrūm.
14. E Rhōdānō.⁵
15. Cūm āmicō Helvētiōrūm.
16. Regnūm Germānōrūm.

Write in Latin.

1. Of the war, of the wars.
2. For the war, for the wars.
3. The wars with the Helvetii.
4. By the Germans.
5. Without friendship.
6. With the man's⁶ daughters.
7. Without the boys.
8. O boys.
9. Before the war with the Germans.
10. Without wagons.
11. Out of the Rhine.
12. Out of the temples of the Germans.

Notes and Questions.

¹ *Form for parsing a noun.*—**cūm vīrīs**: **vīrīs** is a masculine noun of the Second Declension; stem, *vīro*; declined, *vīr, vīrī, vīrō, vīrūm, vīr, vīrō*;

plural, *virī, virōrum, viris, virōs, viri, viris*; it is in the Ablative plural and governed by the preposition *cūm*; rule (16). Repeat the rule giving the list of prepositions used with the Ablative.

² Which endings do nouns in *r* drop? Ans. The Nominative *ūs* and the Vocative *ē*. To which declension does *puērī* belong? Why? *prōvinciā*? Why? How many declensions are there and how distinguished from one another? (8)

³ Notice that the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative of neuter nouns are alike and end in the plural in *ā*.

⁴ What is the quantity of the penult of *frumentō*? Why? Which syllable then is accented? (3 and 4)

⁵ Which syllable of *Rhōdānūs* takes the accent?

⁶ See LN. III., NOTE 2.



LESSON V.

NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS.

17. Nouns in *-iūs* or *-iūm* generally form the Genitive Singular with one *i*, while the accent remains unchanged: *Cassī, of Cassius*; *filī, of the son*; *consīlī, of counsel*.

18. *Vocative of filiūs and proper names in iūs.* A. & G. 40, c: A. & S. 52: B. 128, a: B. & M. 65: G. 29, 2: H. 51, 5: C. 23, 3.

19. *Use of in and sub.* A. & G. 152, c: A. & S. 235, (2): B. 179: B. & M. 987; 988: G. 419: H. 435, I.: C. 131, 3.

20. *deūs* — stem *DEO* — is declined as follows:

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. <i>deūs,</i>	<i>deī, diī, dī.</i>
Gen. <i>deī,</i>	<i>deōrum, deūm.</i>
Dat. <i>deō,</i>	<i>deīs, diīs, dīs.</i>
Acc. <i>deūm,</i>	<i>deōs.</i>
Voc. <i>deūs,</i>	<i>deī, diī, dī.</i>
Abl. <i>deō,</i>	<i>deīs, diīs, dīs.</i>

VOCABULARY.

<i>Cassiūs, ī, m.</i>	<i>Cassius.</i>
<i>castrūm, ī, n.</i>	<i>fort; pl. camp.</i>

conciliūm, i, n.	<i>council, assembly.</i>
consiliūm, i, n.	<i>counsel, plan.</i>
deūs, i, m. (see 20),	<i>god.</i>
ēquūs, i, m.	<i>horse.</i>
ēt, conj.	<i>and.</i>
filiūs, i, m.	<i>son.</i>
in, prep. w. acc. or abl.	<i>into, in.</i>
jūgūm, i, n.	<i>yoke.</i>
Lūciūs, i, m.	<i>Lucius.</i>
oppidūm, i, n.	<i>town.</i>
sūb, prep. w. acc. or abl.	<i>under.</i>

Pronounce; translate; parse the nouns governed by prepositions.

1. Ad deōs ēt¹ deās. 2. Cūm deīs ēt deābūs. 3. Antē
 ōcūlōs deōrūm ēt deārūm. 4. In² oppidō. 5. In² oppidūm.
 6. In castrā³ Germānōrūm. 7. Consiliō⁴ deōrūm. 8. Sīnē
 consiliū. 9. In conciliō Helvētiōrūm. 10. Sūb jūgūm.
 11. Cūm ēquīs ēt carrīs. 12. Cūm ēquīs ēt carrīs Lūcī.
 13. Filiūs Lūcī Cassī. 14. Fīlī⁵ Lūcī Cassī. 15. Pēr op-
 pidā Germānōrūm.⁶ 16. Germānōrūm⁶ oppidā. 17. Trans
 Rhēnūm ēt Rhōdānūm. 18. Gēnēr Lūcī. 19. Cassī.⁵

Write in Latin.

1. To sons and daughters. 2. With sons and daughters.
 3. Before the eyes of sons and daughters. 4. Into² the towns
 of the Germans. 5. In² the Germans' camp.³ 6. Into the
 council of the Germans. 7. By the plans of the gods. 8. O
 son⁵ of Cassius. 9. O Cassius.⁵ 10. Under the yoke.

Notes and Questions.

¹ **ēt** is a conjunction; conjunctions connect words and clauses in Latin as in English. **ēt** connects similar constructions; hence **deās** is governed the same as **deōs** by **ād**.

² Observe carefully the difference in meaning between **in** used with the Accusative and **in** used with the Ablative.

³ Observe that **castrūm** means in the Singular *a fort*, but in the Plural *a camp* (military camp); a Roman camp was surrounded by a trench and a rampart.

⁴ See 17.

⁵ See 18 and A. & G. 241: A. & S. 240: B. 210, RULE VI.: B. & M. 974: G. 194, REM. 3: H. 369: C. 120, 2.

⁶ What is the difference between *oppidā Germanōrūm* and *Germanōrūm oppidā*? LN. III., NOTE 3.

LESSON VI.

ADJECTIVES: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

21. Learn the declension of *bōnūs* (*cārūs*). A. & G. 81: A. & S. 104; 105, 1, 2: B. 154; 155, 1: B. & M. 189; 190, 1: G. 15, I., 2; 33: H. 146-148: C. 39.

22. Agreement of Adjectives. A. & G. 186: A. & S. 205: B. 266, RULE LI.: B. & M. 650: G. 285: H. 438: C. 113, 1.

VOCABULARY.

<i>bōnūs</i> , ā, ūm, ¹	<i>good.</i>
<i>cārūs</i> , ā, ūm,	<i>dear, beloved.</i>
<i>exemplū</i> , I, n.	<i>example.</i>
<i>lacrimā</i> , ae, f.	<i>tear.</i>
<i>magnūs</i> , ā, ūm,	<i>great, big, large.</i>
<i>mālūs</i> , ā, ūm,	<i>bad.</i>
<i>multūs</i> , ā, ūm,	<i>much; pl. many.</i>
<i>parvūs</i> , ā, ūm,	<i>small.</i>
<i>rēliquūs</i> , ā, ūm,	<i>remaining.</i>
<i>Rōmānūs</i> , ā, ūm,	<i>Roman.</i>

¹ ā and ūm are the feminine and neuter endings: recite as if it were printed *bōnūs*, *bōnā*, *bōnūm*.

Pronounce; translate; parse the adjectives.¹

1. Vīr bōnūs,¹ filiā bōnā,² exemplū bōnūm. 2. Vīrī mālī, filiae³ mālāe, exemplā mālā. 3. Cūm filiā cārā. 4. Cūm filiis⁴ cārīs. 5. Glōriā magnā Lūcī Cassī.⁴ 6. Exemplō pōpūlī Rōmānī. 7. Multis cūm lacrimīs. 8. Puērī

multī ēt parvī.⁵ 9. Oppīdā multā ēt magnā. 10. Pēr multōs agrōs. 11. In rēliquā oppīdā. 12. Amīcūs pōpūlī Rōmānī. 13. Cūm amīcīs pōpūlī Rōmānī. 14. In prōvinciām magnām. 15. Carrī multī ēt parvī. 16. In templīs magnīs Germānōrūm.

Write in Latin.

1. Through small⁶ fields. 2. Through small towns. 3. Through a small province. 4. Through the remaining towns. 5. The friendship of the Roman⁷ people. 6. Many good boys.⁵ 7. Many beloved daughters. 8. Many bad men. 9. In a large temple. 10. With many friends.

Notes and Questions.

¹ *Form for parsing an adjective.* — **vīr bōnūs** : **bōnūs** is an adjective of the First and Second Declensions ; Stems, **BŌNO** and **BŌNA** ; declined, **bōnūs, bōnā, bōnūm** ; **bōnī, bōnae, bōnī** ; **bōnō, bōnae, bōnō** ; **bōnūm, bōnām, bōnūm** ; **bōnē, bōnā, bōnūm** ; **bōnō, bōnā, bōnō** ; Plural, **bōnī, bōnae, bōnā** ; **bōnōrūm, bōnārūm, bōnōrūm** ; **bōnīs, bōnis, bōnīs** ; **bōnōs, bōnās, bōnā** ; **bōnī, bōnae, bōnā** ; **bōnis, bōnis, bōnis** ; it is in the Nominative Singular Masculine to agree with its noun **vīr** ; rule (22). Repeat the rule.

² The adjective like the Genitive follows its noun unless emphatic.

³ What irregularity in declension have **deā** and **filiā** ?

⁴ What irregularities in declension have **filiūs** and **Cassiūs** ? (17 and 18)

⁵ The Romans wrote **multī ēt parvī**, *many AND small* ; the English write *many small*, without the conjunction.

⁶ Notice that the adjective has the same number, gender, and case as its noun (see 22).

⁷ In the Latin expression equivalent to *Roman people*, the adjective always follows its noun.



LESSON VII.

ADJECTIVES : FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (*continued*).

23. A. & G. 82 : A. & S. 105, 3 ; 106 : B. 155, 2, 3 : B. & M. 190, 2, 3 : G. 34 : H. 149, 150 : C. 39.

24. Genitive in *iūs* and Dative in *ī*. A. & G. 83, a, b : A. & S. 107, REMARK 1, 2 : B. 155, 4, REM. 1 : B. & M. 191 : G. 35, REMARK : H. 151, 1 : C. 41.

The list of adjectives having their Genitive in *iūs* and Dative in *ī* should be committed to memory.

VOCABULARY.

<i>aegēr, aegrā, aegrūm,</i>	<i>sick.</i>
<i>āliūs, āliā, āliūd,</i>	<i>other, another.</i>
<i>libēr, libērā, libērūm,</i>	<i>free.</i>
<i>mīser, mīserā, mīserūm,</i>	<i>wretched.</i>
<i>nullūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>none, no.</i>
<i>pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm,</i>	<i>beautiful.</i>
<i>sōlūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>alone.</i>
<i>tēnēr, tēnērā, tēnērūm,</i>	<i>tender, delicate.</i>
<i>tōtūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>whole, entire.</i>
<i>ullūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>any.</i>
<i>ūnūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>one.</i>

Pronounce; translate; parse the adjectives.

1. Cūm filiis tēnērīs. 2. Ad vīrōs aegrōs.¹ 3. Ad āliōs vīrōs aegrōs. 4. Pēr agrōs pulchrōs. 5. Ab Helvētiīs libērīs. 6. Contrā lēgātūm mīserūm. 7. Filiae multae ēt pulchrae.² 8. Filiārūm pulchrārūm. 9. Filiis ēt filiābūs pulchrīs. 10. Vīrī multī ēt mīserī. 11. Tōtis castrīs.³ 12. Pēr Helvētiōs sōlōs. 13. Unā pēr Helvētiōs viā. 14. Aliā⁴ viā nullā. 15. Ullā sīnē causā. 16. Alii āmicō. 17. Alii āmicī. 18. Alius āmicī. 19. Unūs ē filiis⁵ Cassī. 20. In⁶ āliūd⁷ oppīdūm.

Notes and Questions.

¹ How does *filiūs Cassī* differ from *Cassī filiūs*? (LN. III., NOTE 3). How does *ad vīrōs aegrōs* differ from *ad aegrōs vīrōs*? (LN. VI., NOTE 2).

² See LN. VI., NOTE 5.

³ See LN. I., NOTE 5.

⁴ What is the Nominative Neuter Singular of *āliūs*? The Genitive Singular? The Dative Singular?

⁵ Translate *ūnūs ē filiis* as if it read *ūnūs filiōrūm*.

⁶ How is *in* to be rendered when used with the Ablative?

⁷ What adjectives have their Genitive in *iūs* and Dative in *ī*?

LESSON VIII.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES. — APPPOSITION.

25. Appositives. A. & G. 183 : A. & S. 204 : B. 265, RULE L. : B. & M. 622 : G. 318 ; 319 : H. 359, NOTE 2 ; 363 : C. 112.

EXAMPLES.

1. *ad oppidū Gēnāvā* (appositive), *to the town of Geneva.*
2. *Titus Lābiēnūs lēgātūs* (appositive), *Titus Labienus the lieutenant.*

VOCABULARY.

<i>aedificiū</i> , i, n.	<i>building, edifice.</i>
<i>armā</i> , ¹ ōrūm, n.	<i>arms, weapons.</i>
<i>Belgae</i> , ārūm, m.	<i>the Belgae.</i>
<i>cōpiā</i> , ae, f.	<i>plenty ; pl. troops.</i>
<i>Galliā</i> , ae, f.	<i>Gaul.</i>
<i>Lābiēnūs</i> , i, m.	<i>Labienus.</i>
<i>lōcūs</i> , ² i, m.	<i>place.</i>
<i>mātūrūs</i> , a, um,	<i>ripe.</i>
<i>pēriculū</i> , i, n.	<i>danger.</i>
<i>privātūs</i> , a, um,	<i>private.</i>
<i>Sēquānī</i> , ōrūm, m.	<i>the Sequani.</i>
<i>Titūs</i> , i, m.	<i>Titus.</i>
<i>victōriā</i> , ae, f.	<i>victory.</i>

¹ *armā*, like the English *arms*, is used only in the plural.

² *lōcūs* is both masculine and neuter in the plural and is declined in that number as follows : Nom., *lōcī* and *lōcā* ; Gen., *lōcōrūm* ; Dat., *lōcis* ; Acc., *lōcōs* and *lōcā* ; Voc., *lōcī* and *lōcā* ; Abl., *lōcis*.

Pronounce ; translate ; parse the nouns which are in apposition or governed by prepositions, and the adjectives.

1. *Ad Titū*¹ *Lābiēnū lēgātū*.⁷
2. *Cū filiābūs*² *pulchrīs Tītī Lābiēnī lēgātī*.
3. *Pēr agrōs magnōs Tītī Lābiēnī lēgātī*.
4. *Ex oppidō Gēnēvā*.⁸
5. *In oppidū Gēnēvā*.
6. *Magnō cū pēriculō*.
7. *Rēliquā privātā aedificiā*.
8. *Frūmentū mātūrū in agrīs*.
9. *Cōpiā frūmentī mātūrī*

in agrīs. 10. In Galliām, in Galliā. 11. Ex⁴ Galliā, ā⁴ Galliā. 12. Victōriā magnā Sēquānōrūm. 13. Cūm cōpiīs Belgārūm. 14. Trans Rhōdānūm⁵ īn Galliām. 15. Pēr multā lōcā. 16. Pēriculūm deōrūm ēt deārūm. 17. Nullā victōriā sīnē armīs.

Write in Latin.

1. Through the entire town. 2. Through the entire town of Geneva.³ 3. Into the province of Gaul. 4. With the troops of Titus Labienus the lieutenant. 5. The remaining private wagons. 6. Into no place. 7. In one place. 8. With many dangers. 9. With many sons and daughters. 10. The Sequani alone.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What are the general rules for gender? (6) What is the gender of nouns of the First Declension? (9) Of the Second Declension? (14)

² What irregular case-endings have *deā* and *filiā*? (11)

³ See 25 and EXAMPLE 1.

⁴ *ē*, *ex* signifies *out of, from*, in the sense of *from within* a place; *ā*, *āb*, *from*, in the sense of *from near* a place.

⁵ Which syllable of *Rhōdānūs* takes the accent? Why? (4) Which of *Sēquānī*?

⁶ With which cases are prepositions used in Latin? Which prepositions are used only with the Ablative? Which with both the Ablative and Accusative? When are *īn* and *sūb* used with the Ablative? When with the Accusative? (16, 19)

⁷ See A. & G. 184.

LESSON IX.

VERBS: PRELIMINARY DEFINITIONS.

26. Learn the following definitions when they are given in the grammar: Use of the Verb; Transitive and Intransitive Verbs; Active Voice; Use of the Indicative Mood; Use of the Present Tense; Person and Number; Conjugation.

A. & G. 108, *a-d*; 111; 121; 122, *a*; 264; 276.

A. & S. 140; 141, I., II.; 259; 145; 146; 147; 149, 1, 2.

B. 26; 41, *b*; 43; 44; 57; 63; 68; 292, RULE LVI.

B. & M. 258; 259, 1-3; 262; 266; 270; 271; 272; 1079; 1080.

G. 15, III.; 109; 204; 245; 246; 218; 116; 117.

H. 192; 193; 194; 195, I.; 474; 466; 199; 201.

C. 64; 188; 66, 1, or 189.



LESSON X.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION.

27. *Personal Endings of the Active Voice and Stem.*

A. & G. 21; 116, SING., PLUR.: A. & S. 147, 3; 150, 1, 2: B. 64, *a*; 69: B. & M. 333, ACTIVE VOICE; 274: G. 111: H. 247, PERSON., ACT., MEANING; 250: C. pp. 102, 104.

28. *The Present Stem*¹ is found in the Present Infinitive Active by dropping the ending *rē* in the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations, and *ērē* in the Third: e. g. *PUTĀRē* is a Present Infinitive Active and *PUTA* its Present Stem; so *DIC* from *DICĒRē*.

29. Learn the *conjugation*² and *meanings* of the Present Indicative Active of *āmō*. A. & G. 128: A. & S. 155: B. 74: B. & M. 232: G. 119: H. 205; 247, 1: C. 74.

30. Observe that the Present Indicative Active of the First Conjugation is conjugated by annexing the Personal Endings (27) to the Present Stem (28); also that the *first person singular* takes the termination *ō*, which absorbs the final stem-vowel *a*.

VOCABULARY.

<i>āmō, āmārē,</i>	<i>love.</i> ³
<i>convōcō, convōcārē,</i>	<i>call together, summon.</i>
<i>confirmō, confirmārē,</i>	<i>establish, strengthen.</i>
<i>importō, importārē,</i>	<i>bring in, import.</i>
<i>occūpō, occūpārē,</i>	<i>seize, occupy.</i>
<i>vastō, vastārē,</i>	<i>lay waste, devastate.</i>

Pronounce; translate; inflect the verbs and give their elements.⁴

1. Importās,⁵ importātīs, importāmūs. 2. Amāmūs, āmant, āmāt. 3. Convōcō, convōcās, convōcāt. 4. Convōcāmūs, convōcātīs, convōcant. 5. Confirmant, confirmātīs, confirmāmūs. 6. Confirmāt, confirmās, confirmō. 7. Occūpō, āmās, importāt. 8. Importō, āmātīs, occūpant. 9. Occūpāmūs, importātīs, āmō. 10. Occūpās, occūpāt, occūpātīs.

Write in Latin.

1. I am importing, you are establishing, he is loving.
2. We occupy, you summon, they devastate. 3. We do import, you do devastate, they do summon. 4. I devastate, you devastate, he devastates. 5. We are devastating, you are devastating, they are devastating.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The Present Stem is named *The First Stem* in some grammars; in others, *The First Root*.

² The *conjugation* of a verb is the change made in its ending to express voice, mood, tense, person, and number.

³ Only the *general* meaning of the verb, without reference to person, number, mood, tense, or voice will be given in the Vocabularies. The *special* meanings can be learned with aid of the grammar.

⁴ The elements of a verb in the present tense are *the stem* and *personal ending*: e. g. *āmāmūs* has the stem *āmā*, signifying *love*, and the personal ending *mūs*, signifying *we*.

⁵ *importās* may be rendered *you are importing*, *you do import*, or *you import*; translate each verb the three ways.

⁶ What is the Present Stem of *pūtārē*? What does the personal ending *nt* signify? *mūs*? *s*? *tīs*? Define the Indicative Mood. The Active Voice. The Present Tense. How is the Present Stem found? (28)

LESSON XI.

THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

31. A. & G. 171; 172; 180; 181: A. & S. 200, 2, 3, 5; 201, 1-3, 10; 203, 1, 2, III., 6-9: B. 203, *a-g*: B. & M. 616, 1, 4-10; 618-620: G. 192; 193: H. 346; 347; 350; 356, 1, 2; 358; 360: C. 107; 108; 108, 1, 2, 3, 6.

32. Subject Nominative. A. & G. 173: A. & S. 209, (*a*): B. 205, RULE I.: B. & M. 633: G. 194: H. 368: C. 109.

33. Agreement of Verb. A. & G. 204: A. & S. 209, (*b*): B. 287, RULE LV.: B. & M. 634: G. 202: H. 460: C. 110, 1.

34. Direct Object. A. & G. 237: A. & S. 229: B. 212, RULE VII.: B. & M. 712: G. 329: H. 371: C. 121, 1.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Puēr** (subject) **āmāt** (predicate), *the boy loves*.
2. **Tītūs conciliūm**¹ (direct object) **convōcāt**, *Titus summons a council*.

VOCABULARY.

dē , prep. w. abl.,	<i>down from, concerning, for.</i>
expugnō, expugnārē ,	<i>storm, capture.</i>
Gallūs, ī, m.	<i>a Gaul.</i>
impēriūm, ī, n.	<i>empire, supreme power.</i>
pugnō, pugnārē ,	<i>fight, contend.</i>
Rōmānūs, ī, m.	<i>a Roman.</i>
servūs, ī, m.	<i>slave.</i>
vexō, vexārē ,	<i>disturb, harass.</i>

Pronounce; translate; name the subject and predicate; conjugate the verbs; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Cassiūs² oppidūm³ expugnāt.⁴
2. Helvētiū oppidūm expugnant.
3. Gallī tōtūm⁵ oppidūm occūpant.
4. Gallī multā oppidā occūpant.
5. Sēquānī agrōs vastant.
6. Agrōs pulchrōs vastāmūs.⁶
7. Agrōs magnōs vastās.
8. Cassiūs conciliūm⁷ convōcāt.
9. Germānī Gallōs vexant.
10. Rō-

mānī oppīdūm Gēnēvām⁸ expugnant. 11. Tītūs Lābiēnūs lēgātūs oppīdūm occūpāt. 12. Rōmānī dē impēriō⁹ pugnant. 13. Dē impēriō pugnāmūs. 14. Dē impēriō pugnātīs.

Write in Latin.

1. The slave fights. 2. The slaves are fighting.¹⁰ 3. The Gauls are storming the town.¹ 4. The Gauls storm many towns. 5. The Helvetii are laying waste the fields. 6. The Gauls fight for empire. 7. The Germans occupy the town of Geneva. 8. Cassius the legate summons a large council. 9. We occupy the entire town.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Observe that in a Latin sentence the subject stands first, the verb last, and the object between.

² See 32 and LN. IV., NOTE 1.

³ See 34.

⁴ Why is *expugnāt* in the third person singular? (33)

⁵ See 24 and 22! Which adjectives have their Genitive in *iūs* and Dative in *i*?

⁶ The subject of a verb in the *first* and *second* person is generally expressed by the personal ending alone; hence *vastāmūs* includes both the simple subject and the simple predicate: *devastate we.*
vastā - mūs.

⁷ See 17.

⁸ See 25.

⁹ See 16.

¹⁰ See LN. X., NOTE 5.



LESSON XII.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION. — IMPERFECT AND FUTURE TENSES.

35. Learn the Imperfect and Future Indicative Active of *āmō*.
A. & G. 118 (for endings); 128 (for conjugation): A. & S. 155:
B. 72, Indicative; 74: B. & M. 282: G. 111, 1-3; 119: H. 205;
247, 1; 243: C. p. 102 (for endings); p. 76 (for conjugation).

36. Use of the Imperfect and Future Tenses. A. & G. 277; 278: A. & S. 145, II., III.: B. 57: B. & M. 1087; 1090: G. 222; 234: H. 468; 470: C. 66, 2, 3.

37. Observe that the same Stem and Personal Endings are used in the conjugation of the Imperfect and Future as in the Present; that between these, however, there is a Tense-Sign, *ba* in the Imperfect and *bi* in the Future; that the first singular of the Future has the termination *o*, like the Present; that in the third plural of the Future *u* takes the place of *i*.

VOCABULARY.

Aquilēiā, ae, f.	<i>Aquileia.</i>
Aquitāniā, ae, f.	<i>Aquitania.</i>
Aquitāni, ōrūm, m.	<i>the Aquitani.</i>
circūm, prep. w. acc.	<i>around, near.</i>
Helvētiūs, ā, ūm,	<i>of the Helvetii.</i>
hiēmō, hiēmārē,	<i>pass the winter.</i>
sūpērō, sūpērārē,	<i>overcome.</i>

Pronounce; translate; conjugate the verbs and give their elements.¹

1. Tītus regnum occūpāt. 2. Tītus regnum occūpābāt.
3. Tītus regnum occūpābīt. 4. Regnum occūpābāmūs.
5. Regnum occūpābīmūs. 6. Regnum occūpābō. 7. Cō-
pia² circūm Aquilēiam³ hiēmābant. 8. Aquitāni circūm
Gēnēvam hiēmābunt. 9. Aquitānos sūpērābīs. 10. Rōmāni
Helvētios sūpērābunt. 11. Galli multa lōca⁴ in Aquitāniā⁵
occūpant. 12. Multi Germāni agros Helvētios vastābant.

Write in Latin.

1. We are overcoming, we were overcoming, we shall over-
come. 2. You are storming, you were storming, you will
storm. 3. Titus will storm the town. 4. Titus was storming
the town. 5. Titus storms many towns. 6. The Romans
will pass the winter near Aquileia. 7. The Aquitani are
passing the winter near Geneva. 8. The Gauls were fighting
for⁶ empire. 9. The Romans fight for glory.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The elements of a verb in the Imperfect and Future Tenses are *the stem, tense-sign, personal ending*: e. g. *love will you* has the Stem *āmā*, *love*; the Future Tense-Sign *bī*, *will*; the Personal Ending *tīs*, *you*.

² What meaning has *cōpiās* in the Singular? LN. VIII., Vy.

³ See 12.

⁴ Decline *lēcā*. LN. VIII., Vy., 2.

⁵ See 19.

⁶ *For*, in the sense of *concerning*, *about*, is to be rendered by *dē*.

⁷ How is the Present Stem found? (28) Remember that the Present Stem and the tenses formed upon it — Present, Imperfect, Future — denote *incomplete* action.

LESSON XIII.

MODIFIERS OF THE SUBJECT AND PREDICATE; DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT; GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

38. Modifiers. A. & G. 178, *a*, *b*; 179: A. & S. 202, 6, I., 1, (1.)-(3.), 2; 203, 5, I., 1, (1.)-(4.), 2: B. 288, *a*: B. & M. 1401, 1-4; 1405, II., 1-4: H. 357, 1; 359, NOTE 1; 361, 1: C. 108, 5.

39. Indirect Object. A. & G. 224: A. & S. 223: B. 239, RULE XXVIII.: B. & M. 818; 819: G. 344: H. 384, I., II.: C. 149; 150.

40. Genitive with Nouns. A. & G. 213: A. & S. 211: B. 226; 230, RULE XIX.: B. & M. 751: G. 357; 358; 360: H. 395: C. 133.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Titus Lābiēnus lēgātus consilia Gallōrum ēnunciāt,**¹ *Titus Labienus the lieutenant reports the plans of the Gauls.*
2. **Cassius Tīto fillam in mātīmōnium dāt,**² *Cassius gives to Titus a daughter in marriage.*

Notes on the Examples.

¹ Of this sentence, **Titus Lābiēnus** is the *subject* and is modified by **lēgātus**, an *appositive*; **consilia Gallōrum ēnunciāt** is the *predicate* and is made up of the verb **ēnunciāt** and its modifier **consilia**, a *direct object*; **consilia** is modified by **Gallōrum**, a *genitive*. G. 284, I., II., REM.; 326, I., II.

² Of this sentence, **Cassius** is the subject and is not modified ; **Tyto** **filiam** **in mātīmōnium dāt** is the predicate, and is made up of the verb **dāt** and its modifiers, viz : **Tyto**, an indirect object ; **filiam**, a direct object ; and **in mātīmōnium**, a phrase.

VOCABULARY.

dō, dārē,	<i>give.</i>
ēnunciō, ēnunciārē,	<i>report.</i>
mātīmōnium, i, n.	<i>marriage.</i>
in mātīmōnium dārē,	<i>to give in marriage.</i>

Pronounce; translate; analyze;¹ conjugate the verbs; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Cassius² consilia Belgārum³ ēnunciābīt. 2. Rōmānis⁴ consilia Belgārum ēnunciābīt. 3. Tītus filiam īn⁵ mātīmōnium dābīt.⁶ 4. Lēgātō filiam īn mātīmōnium dābīt. 5. Lēgātis filias īn mātīmōnium dāmūs. 6. Helvētii multa lōca īn Aquitānia occūpant. 7. Cassius concilium Rōmānōrum convōcāt. 8. Deos⁷ et deas⁸ īn templa convōcāt. 9. Rōmāni oppīda multa et magna⁹ expugnābant. 10. Amīcītiā cūm Helvētīis confirmant. 11. Tōtum¹⁰ oppīdum ullo¹⁰ sinē pēricūlo occūpābītis. 12. Galli agros multos et pvlhros⁹ īn Aquitānia vastābunt.

Notes and Questions.

¹ To analyze a simple sentence is to name its subject and predicate ; the modifiers of the subject, if any ; the verb, and its modifiers, if any ; SEE NOTES ON THE EXAMPLES.

² What is the Genitive and Vocative of **Cassius** ? (17 and 18)

³ See 40.

⁴ See 39.

⁵ A preposition with its noun is a *Phrase* ; when the *Phrase* limits a verb, as in this sentence, it is an *Adverbial Phrase* ; when it limits a noun, as in sentence 6, it is an *Adjective Phrase*.

⁶ Observe that in **dō** the characteristic **a** is short ; in the other verbs of the First Conjugation it is long.

⁷ See 20.

⁸ See 11.

⁹ See LX. VI., NOTE 5.

¹⁰ See 24.

LESSON XIV.

VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION : PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND
FUTURE PERFECT TENSES.

41. Learn the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active of *ămđ*. A. & G. 118; 128; A. & S. 155; B. 75; B. & M. 282; G. 120; H. 205; 243, TENSE-SIGNS of PLUP. and F. PERF.; 247, 1, 2; C. p. 102; pp. 76, 77.

42. Use of the Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses. A. & G. 280; 281; A. & S. 145, V., VI.; B. 57; B. & M. 1096; 1098; G. 233; 236; H. 472; 473; C. 194; 195.

43. What are the two uses of the Perfect Indicative? A. & G. 115, c; 279; A. & S. 145, IV. and REMARK; B. 60; B. & M. 1092; 1093; G. 226; 227; 231; H. 471, I., II.; C. 66, 4.

44. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active of every verb, whatever its conjugation may be, are conjugated like the same tenses of *ămđ*. These tenses are formed on the Perfect Stem and denote *completed action*.

45. The Perfect Stem is found in the Perfect Indicative Active by dropping the ending *ī*: e. g. Perfect Indicative *VASTĀVĪ*, Perfect Stem *VASTĀV*.

VOCABULARY.

<i>confirmđ</i> ,	<i>confirmără</i> ,	<i>confirmăvī</i> , ¹	<i>establish, strengthen.</i>
<i>convōcđ</i> ,	<i>convōcără</i> ,	<i>convōcāvī</i> ,	<i>call together, summon.</i>
<i>dđ</i> ,	<i>dără</i> ,	<i>dēdī</i> , ⁴	<i>give.</i>
<i>expugnđ</i> ,	<i>expugnără</i> ,	<i>expugnāvī</i> ,	<i>storm, capture.</i>
<i>hiēmđ</i> ,	<i>hiēmāre</i> ,	<i>hiēmāvī</i> ,	<i>pass the winter.</i>
<i>occūpđ</i> ,	<i>occūpāre</i> ,	<i>occūpāvī</i> ,	<i>seize, occupy.</i>
<i>Rōmă</i> , ae, f.			<i>Rome.</i>
<i>sūpērđ</i> ,	<i>sūpērără</i> ,	<i>sūpērāvī</i> ,	<i>overcome, subdue.</i>
<i>vastđ</i> ,	<i>vastără</i> ,	<i>vastāvī</i> ,	<i>lay waste, devastate.</i>
<i>vexđ</i> ,	<i>vexără</i> ,	<i>vexāvī</i> ,	<i>disturb, harass.</i>

¹ In this Vocabulary the First Person Singular of the Present Indicative Active, the Present Infinitive Active, and the First Person Singular of the Perfect Indicative Active are given.

Pronounce; translate; conjugate and give a synopsis¹ of the Indicative Mood of each verb.

1. Cassius multos agros vastāvit.² 2. Concīlium Gallōrum convōcāvērō.³ 3. Galli tōtum oppīdum occūpāvērant. 4. Helvētīi castra occūpāvērint. 5. Rōmānī agrum Helvētīum vastāvērunt.² 6. Amīcītiam cūm Rōmānis confirmāvērīt. 7. Cōpiaē circūm Rōmam hiēmāvērē.² 8. Cassius Tīto filiam īn mātīrīmōnium dēdīt.² 9. Rōmānī Helvētīos vexāvērunt.² 10. Sēquānī Germānos sūpērāvērunt.² 11. Circūm Rōmam hiēmāvērant. 12. Oppīdum Aquīlēiam occūpāvi.

Write in Latin.

1. The Aquitani have stormed the town. 2. The Aquitani will have stormed the town. 3. The Aquitani had stormed the town. 4. I have given a daughter in marriage. 5. I had given a daughter in marriage. 6. I shall have given a daughter in marriage. 7. I gave a daughter in marriage to the son of Cassius. 8. You have summoned a council of Romans. 9. You had summoned a council of Romans.

Notes and Questions.

¹ A *Synopsis* of the Indicative Mood consists of the *First Person Singular* of each tense : e. g. the synopsis of **vastāvit** is *vastō, vastābām, vastābō, vastāvi, vastāvērām, vastāvērō*.

² Translate each Perfect in accordance with both its uses : **Cassius vastāvit**, *Cassius has laid waste*, and *Cassius laid waste*. (See 43)

³ Which tenses are formed on the *Perfect Stem* and what action do they denote ? (44) Which are formed on the *Present Stem* and what action do they denote ? (LN. XII., NOTE 7.) The Pluperfect denotes that an action *is completed* in what time ? (42) The Future Perfect ? The Present Tense denotes that an action *is going on* in what time ? (26) The Imperfect Tense ? (36) The Future Tense ? Give the elements of each verb in the Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses : e. g. *loved had they* **āmāv-ēra-nt** has the Perfect Stem **āmāv**, *loved* ; the Pluperfect Tense-Sign **ēra**, *had* ; the Personal Ending **nt**, *they*.

⁴ See LN. XIII., NOTE 6 ; observe that the *Perfect stem* of **dō** is **dēd**, not **dāv**.

LESSON XV.

VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION : IMPERATIVE MOOD.

46. Learn the Imperative Mood, Active Voice, of *āmō* and its meanings. A. & G. 128; 118, for personal endings: A. & S. 155: B. 74, a; 64, b, for personal endings: B. & M. 282: G. 119: H. 205; 247, 3, for personal endings: C. p. 77; p. 104 for personal endings.

47. Use of the Imperative. A. & G. 269: A. & S. 267: B. 312, RULE LXXI.: B. & M. 1110: G. 259: H. 487: C. 247, 1, 2.

VOCABULARY.

āvūs, ī, m.

Divitiācūs, ī, m.

jūvō, *jūvārē*, *jūvī*,

mātūrō, *mātūrārē*, *mātūrāvī*,

nātūrā, ae, f.

nunciō, *nunciārē*, *nunciāvī*,

proeliūm, ī, n.

sōcēr, *sōcērī*, m.

vītō, *vītārē*, *vītāvī*,

vōcō, *vōcārē*, *vōcāvī*,

grandfather.

Divitiacus.

help, aid.

make haste, hasten.

nature.

announce.

battle.

father-in-law.

avoid, shun.

call.

Pronounce; translate; parse the Nouns; conjugate the Imperatives and give the rule for their use. (47)

1. *Jūvā*,¹ *mātūrā*, *nunciā*. 2. *Jūvātō*, *mātūrātō*, *nunciātō*.
3. *Jūvātē*, *mātūrātē*, *nunciātē*. 4. *Vītā*, *Divitiācē*,² *proeliūm*.
5. *Vītā*, O *āvē*,³ *pēriculūm*. 6. *Dātē*, *vīrī*, *Rōmānīs*⁴ *armā*.⁵
7. *Vōcā*, *sōcēr*, *puērōs*. 8. *Mātūrā*, *Cassī*,⁶ *Tītō*⁴ *nunciārē*.
9. *Mātūrātē*, *vīrī*, *oppidūm expugnārē*. 10. *Vastātē agrōs*.
11. *Vastātē multōs agrōs*. 12. *Vastātē totām prōvinciām*.

Write in Latin.

1. Call the men. 2. Help the boys. 3. Shun the danger.
4. Avoid a battle, Divitiacus. 5. Summon a council, Cassius.
6. Call the men, my grandfather. 7. Announce to Cassius.
8. Make haste to announce to Divitiacus. 9. Men, give arms to the Belgae. 10. Import corn.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Observe that the Personal Endings are added to the Present Stem (28); that the Second Person Singular of the Present is the same in form as the Present Stem; that, like the English, the Latin Imperative has no First Person.

² See LN. V., NOTE 5.

³ O *avē*, O grandfather, or my grandfather.

⁴ See 39.

⁵ See LN. VIII., VY.

⁶ See 18.

What is the Present Stem of each verb in the lesson? The Perfect Stem? Which Stem is used in the Imperative? Does the Imperative then denote *incomplete* or *completed* action? What are the Personal Endings of the Imperative?



LESSON XVI.

VERBS: INFINITIVES, PARTICIPLES, GERUND, AND SUPINE.

48. Learn the Active Infinitives and Participles, the Gerund and Supine of *āmō*. A. & G. 118, 2; 128, page 77; 289: A. & S. 143, 4; 148, 1-3; 155: B. 51; 53, a-d; 65; 66; 72; 74, a; 75: B. & M. 264, IV.; 265; 282: G. 110; 119; 120: H. 200, I.-IV.; 205; 248, ACTIVE: C. p. 104; pp. 77, 78.

49. Principal Parts (Stem Forms). A. & G. 122, b: A. & S. 151, 4: B. 73: B. & M. 275: G. 118: H. 202; 203; 220, CONJ. I.: C. 69.

50. The Supine Stem is found in the Supine in *ūm* by dropping the *ūm*: e. g. *cūrātūm* is a Supine in *ūm* and *cūrāt* its Supine Stem.

51. Each Verb has regularly three Stems, the Present (28), the Perfect (45), and the Supine (50). Name the three Stems of each verb in the following Vocabulary.

VOCABULARY.¹

<i>āmō</i> ,	<i>ārē</i> ,	<i>āvī</i> ,	<i>ātūm</i> , ²	<i>love.</i>
<i>cūrō</i> ,	<i>ārē</i> ,	<i>āvī</i> ,	<i>ātūm</i> , ²	<i>care for.</i>
<i>dō</i> ,	<i>dārē</i> , ³	<i>dēdī</i> ,	<i>dātūm</i> , ³	<i>give.</i>
<i>jūvō</i> ,	<i>jūvārē</i> ,	<i>jūvī</i> ,	<i>jūtūm</i> ,	<i>help, aid.</i>

nēgō,	ārē,	āvī,	ātūm,	deny.
pugnō,	ārē,	āvī,	ātūm,	fight.
vastō,	ārē,	āvī,	ātūm,	lay waste, devastate.
vexō,	ārē,	āvī,	ātūm,	disturb, harass.
vōcō,	ārē,	āvī,	ātūm,	call.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The Principal Parts (49) will be given hereafter in the Vocabularies ; these Parts should always be learned.

² Most verbs of the First Conjugation form their Perfect and Supine like **āmō**. To form the Principal Parts let **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** take the place of final **ō** in the Present Indicative Active : e. g. **cūrō**, **cūrārē**, **cūrāvī**, **cūrātūm**.

³ See LN. XIII., NOTE 6.

How many Infinitives has each verb in the Active Voice ? On which Stem is each formed ? Name the Infinitives of **dō**, **cūrō**, **jūvō**, and **vastō**. What is the Ending of each Infinitive ? On which Stems are the Active Participles formed ? What is the Ending of each Participle ? What is the Future Active Participle of **dō**, **nēgō**, **pugnō** ? What is the Present Participle of each ? On which Stem is the Gerund formed ? Form and decline the Gerund of **dō** and **cūrō**. What are the Endings of the Supine ?



LESSON XVII.

USE OF THE INFINITIVE.

52. Infinitive as Object. A. & G. 272 : A. & S. 270 : B. 315, f : B. & M. 1148 : G. 527 : H. 534 : C. 237.

53. Subject of the Infinitive. A. & G. 240, f : A. & S. 239 : B. 225, RULE XVI. : B. & M. 1136 : G. 526, second part : H. 536 : C. 109, 3.

EXAMPLES.

- Dicīt Rōmānōs¹ oppidūm² expugnārē,³ he says (that⁴) the Romans⁴ are storming⁴ the town.**
- Dicīt Rōmānōs oppidūm expugnāvissē, he says (that) the Romans have stormed the town ; or he says (that) the Romans stormed the town.**

3. **Dicīt Rōmānōs oppidūm expugnātūrōs⁵ essē**, *he says (that) the Romans are about to storm the town; or he says (that) the Romans will storm the town.*

Notes on the Examples.

¹ See 53.

² See 34.

³ The whole expression **Rōmānōs oppidūm expugnārē** is the Direct Object of **dicīt** (see 52).

⁴ Observe that the Infinitive **expugnārē** is translated by the Indicative *are storming*; the Subject Accusative **Rōmānōs**, by the Subject Nominative *the Romans*; and the Conjunction *that* is supplied.

⁵ Observe that the Participle of the Future Infinitive Active agrees with the Subject of the Infinitive in gender, number, and case.

VOCABULARY.

Aeduī, ōrūm, m.	<i>the Aedui.</i>
Ariovistūs, ī, m.	<i>Ariovistus.</i>
dēmonstrō, āre, āvi, ātūm,¹	<i>show, declare.</i>
dicīt,	<i>he says.</i>
existīmō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>think, suppose.</i>
nēgō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>deny.</i>
nunciō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>announce.</i>
pūtō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>think.</i>

Pronounce; translate; parse the Nouns and Infinitives.

1. **Dicīt² Rōmānōs Helvētiōs vexārē.³** 2. **Pūtāt Rōmānōs Helvētiōs vexāvissē.** 3. **Nunciāt Rōmānōs Helvētiōs vexātūrōs essē.** 4. **Existīmāt Ariovistūm regnūm in Galliā occūpātūrūm essē.** 5. **Tītūs existīmāt Ariovistūm regnūm in Galliā occūpāvissē.** 6. **Ariovistūs nunciāt Germānōs agrūm Helvētiūm vastātūrōs essē.** 7. **Dicīt Rōmānōs frūmentūm importārē.** 8. **Existīmāt Helvētiōs frūmentūm importātūrōs essē.** 9. **Dicīt Gallōs frūmentūm Rōmānīs⁴ dātūrōs essē.** 10. **Dicīt Aeduōs Rōmānīs⁴ armā dātūrōs essē.**

Write in Latin.

1. He says² (that⁵) the Sequani are about to harass the Helvetii. 2. He says (that) the Germans are laying waste

the Helvetian territory. 3. Titus thinks (that) the Romans will give corn to the Aedui. 4. Titus thinks (that) the Romans are importing corn. 5. He says (that) Cassius has summoned a council of Romans. 6. He announces (that) the Aquitani have stormed the towns.

Notes.

¹ The verbs in this Vy. may have as Object an Infinitive with its Subject Accusative.

² Study carefully the EXAMPLES and NOTES ON THE EXAMPLES before attempting to translate the sentences.

³ *Form for parsing an Infinitive.* — **vexārē** is a Transitive (26) Verb; Principal Parts (49), *vexō, vexārē, vexāvi, vexātum*; Stems, **VEXA** (28), **VEXĀV** (45), **VEXĀT** (50); Infinitives of the Active Voice, *vexārē, vexāvissē, vexātūrūs essē*; it is made in the Present Infinitive Active and with its Subject **Rōmānōs** is the Object of **dicit**; rule (see 52).

⁴ See 39.

⁵ Words in parentheses are not to be translated; see also Notes on the Examples, 4.

LESSON XVIII.

GENERAL EXERCISE. — ABLATIVE.

54. Ablative of Means. A. & G. 248: A. & S. 247: B. 258, RULE XLIII.: B. & M. 873: G. 403: H. 420: C. 166.

VOCABULARY.

animūs, ī, m.

mind.

conciliō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,

win, conciliate.

confirmō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,

establish, encourage.

intēr, prep. w. acc.

between, among.

Nōrēiā, ae, f.

Noreia.

oppugnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,

attack, besiege, assault.

proptēr, prep. w. acc.

on account of.

Trēvirī, ōrum, m.

the Treviri.

verbūm, ī, n.

word.

Pronounce; translate; analyze;¹ parse.

1. Intēr² Sēquānos ēt Helvētios. 2. Proptēr² angustias.
 3. Nōrēiam oppugnāmus.³ 4. Nōrēiam oppugnābant. 5. Rō-
 māni Nōrēiam oppugnāvērunt.⁴ 6. Trēviri Nōrēiam oppug-
 nābunt. 7. Dīcīt Trēvīros⁵ Nōrēiam oppugnātūros⁶ essē.⁷
 8. Nōrēiam oppugnātīs. 9. Nōrēiam oppugnātē.⁸ 10. Di-
 vitiācus Gallōrum anīmos verbis⁹ confirmāvit. 11. Divitiācus
 Gallōrum anīmos verbis confirmābīt. 12. Tītus pūtāt Diviti-
 ācum Gallōrum anīmos verbis confirmātūrūm essē. 13. Cassius
 regnum conciliāvit. 14. Cassius regnum cōpiis conciliābāt.
 15. Cassius regnum cōpiis Divitiāco¹⁰ conciliābīt. 16. Nēgāt
 Cassium regnum cōpiis Divitiāco conciliātūrūm essē. 17. Tītus
 Divitiāco¹⁰ filiā in matrīmōnium¹¹ dēdīt.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XIII., NOTE 1.

² See LN. XIII., NOTE 5.

³ *Form for parsing a verb in the Indicative Mood.* — **oppugnāmus** is a Transitive (26) Verb; Principal Parts (49), *oppugnē, oppugnārē, oppugnāvī, oppugnātūm*; it is of the First Conjugation, because the characteristic vowel is *ā*; Stems, *OPPUGNA, OPPUGNĀV, OPPUGNĀT*; Synopsis (LN. XIV., NOTE 1), *oppugnō, oppugnābām, oppugnābō, oppugnāvi, oppugnāverām, oppugnāverō*; conjugated, *oppugnō, oppugnās, oppugnāt, oppugnāmus, oppugnātis, oppugnant*; it is made in the First Person Plural of the Present Indicative Active to agree with its Subject, a pronoun (*nos, we*) understood; rule (33).

⁴ What are the two uses of the Perfect Indicative? (43)

⁵ See 53.

⁶ See LN. XVII., Notes on the Examples, 5.

⁷ See 52. In what two ways may the Future Infinitive be translated? See LN. XVII., Example 3.

⁸ See 47. How does this form differ from the Second Person Plural of the Present Indicative?

⁹ *verbis, with words, or by means of words*; it is a modifier (38) of **confirmāvit**.

¹⁰ See 39.

¹¹ See 19.

LESSON XIX.

THIRD DECLENSION : NOUNS.

55. Stem and Declension. A. & G. 32, *a, b*; 33, *a-g*: A. & S. 38; 40, 10: B. 36; 121: B. & M. 44-47: G. 16; 25; 26: H. 46-47, including *fine print*.

56. A. & G. 48, *a-d*; 49, *w. declension of consŭl, nŏmĕn, hŏnŏr, leo, frātĕr, virgŏ, corpŭs*: A. & S. 56, II., REMARKS 1-3; 57, *declension of hŏnŏr, sermŏ, pātĕr, carmĕn*: B. 130; 135, *w. declension of consŭl, virgŏ, leŏ, nŏmĕn, āmŏr, pātĕr*: B. & M. 73-77; 90-97, including the *Paradigms*: G. 36-39; 40; 42; 43; 44-46; 47: H. 55; 56; 57, *Case-Suffixes*; 60, *Paradigms*, 1, 3, 4: C. 26, *declension of rĕx, nŏmĕn, leo, pātĕr, virgŏ, corpŭs*.

VOCABULARY.

accŭso, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>accuse, censure.</i>
Caesār, Caesārīs, m.	<i>Caesar.</i>
consŭl, consŭlīs, m.	<i>consul.</i>
citrā, prep. w. acc.	<i>this side of.</i>
flŭmĕn, flŭmĭnīs, n.	<i>river.</i>
frātĕr, frātrīs, m.	<i>brother.</i>
hŏnŏr, hŏnŏrīs, m.	<i>honor.</i>
mātĕr, mātĕrīs, f.	<i>mother.</i>
pātĕr, pātĕrīs, m.	<i>father.</i>
Sĕquānā, ae, m.	<i>the Seine.</i>
sŏrŏr, sŏrŏrīs, f.	<i>sister.</i>
uxŏr, uxŏrīs, f.	<i>wife.</i>

Pronounce; translate; decline each noun and give its Stem and Endings; parse the verbs.

1. A¹ flŭmĭnĕ Rhŏdāno.² 2. E¹ flŭmĭnĕ Rhŏdāno. 3. Ad flŭmĕn Sĕquānam. 4. Citrā flŭmĕn Rhĕnum. 5. Pātĕr sŏrŏrĕm in mātĕrīmŏnĭum dat. 6. Mātĕr sŏrŏrĕm in mātĕrīmŏnĭum dābit. 7. Caesār sŏrŏrĕm in mātĕrīmŏnĭum dĕdit. 8. Tĭtus dĭcĭt Caesārĕm sŏrŏrĕm in mātĕrīmŏnĭum dĕdisse. 9. Caesār uxŏrĕm accŭsāvĭt. 10. Caesār consŭl² Tĭtum lĕgātum² accŭsāvērat. 11. Nĕgat Caesārĕm consŭlĕm Tĭtum

lĕgātum accūsāvisse. 12. *Caesārīs*³ *uxōrēm accūsābīmus.*
13. *Pātrēm et mātērēm et frātrēm accūsant.*

Write in Latin.

1. To the river Rhone. 2. This side of the river Seine.
3. Across the river Rhine. 4. Caesar gives a sister in marriage.
5. Caesar has given to the consul a daughter in marriage.
6. He thinks (that) Caesar has given a daughter in marriage.
7. We shall accuse Caesar the consul. 8. Brothers accuse sisters.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. IV., VY., and LN. VIII., NOTE 4.

² See 25.

³ See LN. III., NOTES 2 and 3.

How is the Stem of a noun found? What are the Case-Endings of the Third Declension? Which Case-Endings do nouns with *liquid* Stems omit? How does the Stem of *flāminis* differ in form from the Nominative Singular?



LESSON XX.

THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

57. A. & G. 21; 32, *a, b*; 33, *a-g*; 44; 45, *a-c*; 46: A. & S. 56, I., REMARKS 1-3; 57, *declension of nox, ars, milēs, lāpis, cāpūt, poēmā*: B. 130-134, *including the Paradigms*: B. & M. *all of 86-88*: G. 37; 39; 51; 54; 56; 57: H. 24, 1; 30; 36, 2; *all of 56-59*: C. Remainder of 26; 27.

VOCABULARY.

<i>atquē</i> ¹ or <i>āc</i> , ¹ conj.	<i>and.</i>
<i>cāpūt</i> , <i>cāpītis</i> , n.	<i>head.</i>
<i>custōs</i> , <i>custōdis</i> , m.	<i>guard.</i>
<i>Dumnōrix</i> , <i>Dumnōrigis</i> , m.	<i>Dumnorix.</i>
<i>Jūra</i> , ae, m.	<i>the Jura.</i>
<i>milēs</i> , <i>militis</i> , m.	<i>soldier.</i>
<i>mons</i> , <i>montis</i> , m.	<i>mountain.</i>

pars,	partis, f.	<i>part.</i>
princeps,	principis, m.	<i>chief.</i>
rādx,	rādix, f.	<i>root.</i>
rex,	rēgis, m.	<i>king.</i>
urbs,	urbis, f.	<i>city.</i>

Pronounce; translate; decline each noun, give its Stem and form its Nominatives.

1. Ad rēgēm Germānōrum. 2. Ad princĭpēm Galliae prōvinciae. 3. Ad montēm² Jūram. 4. Sūb³ montē Jūrā. 5. Intēr montēm Jūram et flūmēn Rhōdānum. 6. Circūm urbēm² Rōmam.⁴ 7. In urbē Rōmā. 8. Proptēr hōnōrēs Caesāris. 9. In partēs Galliae. 10. Cūm Dumnōrīgē fratrē Divitiāci. 11. Rex atquē āmicus. 12. Sīnē rēgē atquē sīnē āmicis. 13. Cāpitā mīlītūm. 14. Ad rādīcēs montīs. 15. Cum princĭpē tōtius Galliae. 16. Urbēs multae et mag-nae.⁵

Notes.

¹ *atquē* is used before vowels and consonants; *ac*, only before consonants.

² A. & G. 47 a, page 20 : A. & S. 83, II., 3 : B. 137, a, 1 : B. & M. 116 ; 119 : G. 54, REMARK : H. 64, urbs : C. p. 26, dens.

³ See *sūb*, in General Vocabulary at end of the book.

⁴ Words not given in the Special Vocabularies can be found in the General Vocabulary.

⁵ See LN. VI., NOTE 5.

LESSON XXI.

THIRD DECLENSION. — TWO ACCUSATIVES.

58. Two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing. A. & G. 239 : A. & S. 230 : B. 216, RULE VIII. : B. & M. 715 : G. 334 : H. 373 : C. 126

EXAMPLES.

1. Caesārēm consūlēm creāvērunt, *they elected Caesar consul.*
2. Oppĭdum appellānt Gēnēvam, *they call the town Geneva.*

VOCABULARY.

appellō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>name, call.</i>
civītās, civītātīs, f.	<i>state.</i>
creō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>elect, appoint.</i>
lēgātio, lēgātiōnīs, f.	<i>embassy.</i>
lex, lēgis, f.	<i>law.</i>
mors, mortīs, f.	<i>death.</i>
pax, pācis, f.	<i>peace.</i>
post, prep. w. acc.	<i>after.</i>
proximūs, ā, ūm,	<i>nearest.</i>
Pyrēnaeus, ā, ūm,	<i>Pyrenean.</i>
sēnātor, sēnātorīs, m.	<i>senator.</i>
suus, ā, ūm,	<i>his, their.</i>
virtūs, virtūtīs, f.	<i>valor, virtue.</i>

Pronounce; translate; analyze;¹ parse.

1. Pōpulus Caesārēm² consūlēm² creāvit. 2. Ancum Marcium rēgēm pōpulus creāvit. 3. Nunciat Ancum Marcium rēgēm pōpulum³ creāvisse.⁴ 4. Pōpulus Rōmānus sēnātorēs pātrēs appellat. 5. Rōmāni suam⁵ urbēm Rōmam appellāverunt. 6. Dumnōrix, frātēr⁶ Divitiāci,⁷ regnum in suā⁵ civītātē occūpāvit. 7. Helvētii cūm proximīs civītātībūs pācēm et āmicītiā confirmant. 8. Caesār oppīdum virtūtē⁸ suōrum milītūm expugnāvit. 9. Ex oppīdo Gēnēvā⁶ pons¹¹ ad Helvētios pertīnet (*extends*). 10. Aquītāniā ā Garumnā⁹ flūmīnē ad Pyrēnaeos⁹ montes pertīnet. 11. Lēgātiōnīs princīpēm Dumnorīgēm creāverunt. 12. Belgae et Galli linguā¹⁰ et lēgībūs¹⁰ diffērunt (*differ*). 13. Post mortēm Caesārīs.

Write in Latin.

1. After the death of Dumnorix. 2. After the death of his brother Divitiacus. 3. The Romans elected the man consul. 4. The Romans call their city Rome. 5. The Gauls will appoint Dumnorix chief. 6. He says that the Gauls will appoint Dumnorix chief. 7. Dumnorix will seize the royal power in his state. 8. We shall take the town by means of the soldiers' valor.⁸

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XIII., NOTE 1.² See 53 and Examples.³ See 53.⁴ See LN. XVII., NOTE 3.

⁵ When *suūs* refers to a noun in the Plural, as in sentence 5 it refers to *Rōmāni*, render it *their*: when it refers to a noun in the Singular, as in sentence 6 it refers to *Dumnōrix*, render it *his*, *her*, or *its*. It generally refers to the subject of its clause.

⁶ See 25.⁷ See 40.⁸ See 54.⁹ See General Vocabulary.¹⁰ See LN. I., NOTE 5.¹¹ *pons*, *pontis*, m. *bridge*.

LESSON XXII.

THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

59. A. & G. *Review* 44; 45; 46; 47; 48; 49, including all *Paradigms* under these references: A. & S. 57, *ŏpūs* and the declensions already learned: B. 136: B. & M. all the *Paradigms* under 88-97, III.: G. 48-50: H. all of 61: C. 26 to I. — nouns.

60. *Rules of Gender.* A. & G. 65, a-c: A. & S. 58; 59; 62; 66: B. 140: B. & M. 152; 159; 168: G. 40; 44; 47; 50; 57; 61, 1, 2: H. 99; 105; 111: C. 30.

VOCABULARY.

<i>corpūs</i> ,	<i>corpōris</i> , n.	<i>body</i> .
<i>crūs</i> ,	<i>crūris</i> , n.	<i>leg</i> .
<i>flōs</i> ,	<i>flōris</i> , m.	<i>flower</i> .
<i>frigus</i> ,	<i>frigōris</i> , n.	<i>cold</i> , <i>frost</i> .
<i>fūnūs</i> ,	<i>fūnēris</i> , n.	<i>funeral procession</i> .
<i>gēnūs</i> ,	<i>gēnēris</i> , n.	<i>kind</i> .
<i>jūs</i> ,	<i>jūris</i> , n.	<i>right</i> , <i>law</i> .
<i>mōs</i> ,	<i>mōris</i> , m.	<i>custom</i> , <i>manner</i> .
<i>ŏnūs</i> ,	<i>ŏnēris</i> , n.	<i>load</i> , <i>burden</i> .
<i>ŏpūs</i> ,	<i>ŏpēris</i> , n.	<i>work</i> .
<i>scēlūs</i> ,	<i>scēlēris</i> , n.	<i>crime</i> , <i>guilt</i> .
<i>temipūs</i> ,	<i>tempōris</i> , n.	<i>time</i> .
<i>vulnūs</i> ,	<i>vulnēris</i> , n.	<i>wound</i> .

Decline each noun, name its Stem, form its Nominative, and give its Rule of Gender.¹

1. Jūs² belli; jūrā pōpūli Rōmāni. 2. Gēnūs proeli;³ multa gēnērā fūnērūm. 3. Tempōrē⁴ patrūm; tempōrā ēt mōrēs. 4. Vulnērā milītūm. 5. Flōrēs pulchri.⁵ 6. Prop-ter frīgōrā. 7. In⁶ rēliqum tempūs. 8. Mōrē ēt exemplō pōpūli Rōmāni. 9. Milītēs multā vulnērā accēpērunt (*have received*). 10. Scēlērā virōrum sunt (*are*) multa. 11. Crūrā ēqui sunt magna. 12. Corpūs vīri est (*is*) parvum. 13. Gēnērā flōrūm sunt multa. 14. Nullum⁷ ōnūs aliud. 15. Nulla ōnērā alia. 16. Onērā multa et magna. 17. Facta⁹ māla⁸ scēlērā⁹ appellāmus. 18. Rex jūrā et mōrēs vīris¹⁰ dābāt.¹¹ 19. Multa gēnērā frūmenti importābīmus. 20. Dicit Rōmānos multa gēnērā frūmenti importāre.¹²

Notes and Questions.

¹ All Exercises are to be pronounced and translated, whether the direction "pronounce; translate," is given or not.

² Which cases of *Neuter* nouns are alike in form? What is the Plural Ending of these cases?

³ See 17.

⁴ See LN. I., NOTE 5.

⁵ How does *flōrēs pulchri* differ from *pulchri flōrēs*? (LN. VI., NOTE 2.)

⁶ *in, for.*

⁷ Name the adjectives with Genitive in *tūs* and Dative in *i*. (24)

⁸ *māla* modifies *facta*.

⁹ See 53.

¹⁰ See 39.

¹¹ What does the Imperfect Tense denote? (36)

¹² See LN. XVII.



LESSON XXIII.

THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

61. A. & G. Vowel-Stems, 51, *c*; 52; 53, *a, b*; 54; 55, *a-e*: A. & S. 57, declension of *turrīs, rūpēs, sēdīlē, ānīmāl*: B. 130; 137, *a, b*, 1-2. REMARK: B. & M. *all of* 98, I, and 99, II.; 100: G. 58-61: H. 62, 1, 2; 63, 1; 64, 1; 65, 1-3: C. I.—*nouns*, pp. 25-27.

VOCABULARY.

Allobrogēs, Allobrogŭm, m.	<i>the Allobroges.</i>
ānimāl, ānimālīs, n.	<i>animal.</i>
collīs, collīs, m.	<i>hill.</i>
crēmō, ārē, āvī, ātŭm,	<i>burn.</i>
finīs, finīs, m.	<i>limit; pl. territory.</i>
hostīs, hostīs, m. and f.	<i>enemy.</i>
ignīs, ignīs, m.	<i>fire.</i>
mārē, mārīs, n.	<i>sea.</i>
nāvīs, nāvīs, f.	<i>ship.</i>
nūbēs, nūbīs, f.	<i>cloud.</i>
quē, ¹ conj.	<i>and.</i>
rŭpēs, rŭpīs, f.	<i>rock, cliff.</i>
terrā, ae, f.	<i>earth, land.</i>
turrīs, turrīs, f.	<i>tower.</i>

¹ quē is appended to the second of the connected words: e. g. **rŭpēs turrisquē**, *cliff and tower*. Words thus appended are called *enclitics*.

Decline each noun, name its Stem, and form its Nominatives.

1. In nāvībŭs. 2. In¹ collē et in montē. 3. In hostiŭm nŭmērō. 4. Gēnērā ānīmālīŭm multa sunt. 5. Terrā mārīquē.² 6. Vīros ignī³ crēmant. 7. Allobrogēs vīrum ignī crēmant. 8. Nunciat Allobrogēs⁴ vīrum ignī crēmāre. 9. In turrībŭs et in¹ rŭpībŭs. 10. In nūbībŭs. 11. Intēr finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogŭm⁵ Rhōdānus fluit (*flows*). 12. Helvētīi pēr angustias et finēs Sēquānōrum suas⁶ cōpias trāduxērānt (*had led across*). 13. Mons Jūra finēs Sēquānōrum āb Helvētīis dīvidit (*separates*).

Write in Latin.

1. On¹ the cliffs. 2. Out of the ships. 3. Through the territory of the Aedui. 4. Into the territory of the Sequani. 5. On the hills and mountains. 6. In the number of animals. 7. Men will burn the tower with fire.³ 8. He says that men will burn the tower with fire. 9. Many kinds of towers. 10. The dangers of land and sea.

Notes and Questions.

¹ *in, on.*² A. & G. 156, *a*: A. & S. 198, II., REMARK (*a.*), (*b.*): B. 330, *a*: G. 477; 478; 479: H. 554, I., 2: C. 183, 2.³ See 54.⁴ See 53.⁵ What does *Allobrōgūm* modify?⁶ See LN. XXI., NOTE 5. To what noun does it refer?⁷ What is the rule of gender for *mārē, rūpēs, milēs, nāvis, tempūs, hōnōr, civitās, lēgatio*? (60). See H. 100, 3, for *lēgatio*.

LESSON XXIV.

THE VERB SUM.

62. Learn the entire conjugation of *sum*. A. & G. 119: A. & S. 153: B. 71: B. & M. 277: G. 112: H. 204: C. 70.**63.** What is an Irregular Verb? A. & G. 137: A. & S. 178: B. & M. 410: H. 289. What are the Stems of *sum*? What are the Personal Endings? What are the Principal Parts of *sum*? Where are the following forms made: *ērām, est, fuērunt, simūs, ērunt, fuērant, estō, fuissēm, fuērō*?

LESSON XXV.

PREDICATE NOUN AND ADJECTIVE.

64. A. & G. 176, *a, b*; 183; 185; 186, *b*: A. & S. 210, REMARK 1, (*a.*): B. 206, RULE II.: B. & M. 666: G. 202: H. 362; 438, 2: C. 111.

VOCABULARY.

<i>Ārār, Ārārīs, acc. Ārārīm, m.</i>	<i>the Sabine, pronounced Sōne.</i>
<i>Divīco, ōnis, m.</i>	<i>Divico.</i>
<i>extrēmūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>furthermost.</i>
<i>hōmō,¹ Inīs, m. and f.</i>	<i>man.</i>
<i>impērātōr, ōrīs, m.</i>	<i>commander-in-chief, general.</i>

lĕgio, ōnĭs, f.	<i>legion.</i>
mŭliĕr, ĕrĭs, f.	<i>woman.</i>
obsĕs, ĭdĭs, m. and f.	<i>hostage.</i>
pŏtestās, ātĭs, f.	<i>power.</i>
testĭs, ĭs, m. and f.	<i>witness.</i>

Pronounce; translate; analyze; parse.

1. Oppĭdum est magnum.² 2. Anĭmāl fuĭt parvum.
 3. Pŭtat suam sŏrŏrĕm eſſĕ pulchram.³ 4. Hŏmĭnĕs fuĕrunt
 aegri. 5. Sĕquāni ōlĭ ĕrunt libĕri. 6. Cĕſār ĕrāt impĕrātŏr.
 7. Mŭliĕr est bŏna. 8. Dĭcĭt Sĕquānos ōlos fŭtŭros eſſĕ
 libĕros. 9. Eſtĕ,⁴ O puĕri, bŏni. 10. Arioviſtus fuĭt rex
 Germānŏrum. 11. Divĭco dux Helvĕtiŏrum fuĕrāt. 12. Le-
 gātĭŏnĭs Divĭco princeps fuĭt. 13. Extrĕmum oppĭdum Allo-
 brŏgum est Gĕnĕvā. 14. Pŏpŭlus⁵ Rŏmānus est testĭs.
 15. Erāt in Galliā lĕgio ūnā. 16. Pars cĭtrā flŭmĕn Arārĭm⁶
 rĕlĭquā est. 17. Flŭmĕn⁷ est Arār quŏd (*which*) pĕr finĕs
 Aeduŏrum et Sĕquānŏrum in Rhŏdānum influĭt (*flows*).
 18. Mons Jŭrā⁸ est inter Sĕquānos ĕt Helvĕtios. 19. Prop-
 ter frīgŏra frŭmenta⁹ in agris mātŭra non ĕrant. 20. Aedui
 Sĕquānis¹⁰ obsĭdĕs dĕdĕrunt.

Notes and Questions.

¹ **hŏmo** means a *human being*, man or woman; **vĭr** means *man, hero*, never woman.

² **oppĭdum est magnum** may be rendered *the town is large*; *it is a large town*; or *there is a large town*: the word *there* as used in the last rendering has no equivalent in Latin.

³ See LN. XVII. and Examples.

⁴ See 47.

⁵ **pŏpŭlus** takes a *Singular verb*; *people*, its English equivalent, usually takes a *Plural verb*.

⁶ What is the rule of gender for **Arār**? (6)

⁷ See 64.

⁸ See 25.

⁹ Translate **frŭmenta** as if it were Singular.

¹⁰ See 39.

LESSON XXVI.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

65. A. & G. 265, a, b : A. & S. 260 : B. 293 : B. & M. 1161 :
G. 247-249 : H. 196, II., 1-4 : C. 201.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Sī Liscus sit dux, if Liscus SHOULD BE leader ; or, if Liscus BE leader.*
2. *Sī Liscus esset dux, if Liscus WERE leader.*
3. *Sī Liscus fuērit dux, if Liscus SHOULD HAVE BEEN leader ; or, if Liscus SHOULD BE leader.*
4. *Sī Liscus fuisset dux, if Liscus HAD BEEN leader.*
5. *Sīmus dūcēs, LET US BE leaders.*

VOCABULARY.

<i>cūpīdītās, ātis, f.</i>	<i>desire.</i>
<i>dux, dūcis, m. and f.</i>	<i>leader, guide.</i>
<i>Liscūs, ī, m.</i>	<i>Liscus.</i>
<i>multitūdo, inis, f.</i>	<i>multitude.</i>
<i>nōn, adv.</i>	<i>not.</i>
<i>ōrātiō, ōnis, f.</i>	<i>speech, oration.</i>
<i>sī, conj.</i>	<i>if.</i>
<i>vectīgāl, ālis, n.</i>	<i>tax, revenue.</i>

Conjugate and give a synopsis¹ of each Subjunctive ; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. *Sī² Caesar sit³ consul.⁴*
2. *Sī Caesar esset consul.*
3. *Sī Caesar fuērit consul.*
4. *Sī Caesar fuisset consul.*
5. *Sīmus consules.*
6. *Sī frūmentum esset mātūrum.*
7. *Sī propter frigōra frūmentum in agris sit nōn⁵ mātūrum.*
8. *Sī vectīgālia fuissent magna.*
9. *Sī vectīgālia essent parva.*
10. *Sī Divīco princeps lēgatiōnis fuisset.*
11. *Sī nōn⁵ bōnus sis.*
12. *Sī ōrātiōnes Caesaris fuissent multae.*
13. *Sī multitūdo milītum sit magna.*
14. *Sī cūpīdītās regni esset magna.*

15. Si rex fuisses. 16. Milites simus. 17. Si miles essem.
18. Si sis imperator.

Write in Latin.

1. If Ariovistus should be king. 2. If Ariovistus were king. 3. If Ariovistus had been king. 4. Let us be kings. 5. Let us be good. 6. If the mountain were large. 7. If the boys had been bad. 8. If we were not free. 9. If the furthest town had been Geneva. 10. If the corn had not been ripe. 11. If Divitiacus were leader of the Helvetii. 12. If the danger had been great.

Notes.

¹ A Synopsis of the Subjunctive includes the First Person Singular of each tense : e. g. *sim, essem, fuërim, fuisset*.

² *si* is a conditional conjunction ; the sentence which it introduces is a conditional sentence.

³ Before translating the sentences observe carefully how each tense of the Subjunctive is rendered in the EXAMPLES.

⁴ See 64.

⁵ A. & G. 207 : A. & S. 190, 2 : B. 30 : B. & M. 460 : G. 440, 1, 2 : H. 551 : C. 255. What does *nōn* modify ?



LESSON XXVII.

COMPOUNDS OF SUM. — DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS.

66. Compounds of sum. A. & G. 120, *a, b*, *prōsum* : A. & S. 154, REM. 5 and 6 : B. 109, I., *a* : B. & M. 279 ; 411 : G. 113 ; 114 : H. 289 ; 290, I., III. : C. 71.

67. Dative with Compounds. A. & G. 228 : A. & S. 224 : B. 242, RULE XXX. : B. & M. 826 : G. 346 : H. 386 : C. 154.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Pauci*¹ *sūperfuērunt*, few survived.
2. *Dux suis militibus* (67) *ādērat*, the leader WAS ASSISTING his soldiers.

3. **Caesar prōvinciae (67) praefuit, Caesar RULED OVER the province.**
 4. **Sī Liscus multis¹ prōdesset, if Liscus WERE USEFUL to many.**
 5. **Sī consilium dēfuisset, if counsel HAD BEEN WANTING.**
 6. **Tītus lēgiōni (67) praecerat, Titus WAS IN COMMAND OF the legion.**

VOCABULARY.

āb-sūm,	āb-essē,	āb-fui,	be away, be absent, be distant.
ād-sūm,	ād-essē,	āf ² -fui,	be present, assist.
dē-sūm,	dē-essē,	dē-fui,	be wanting.
hūmānītās, ātis, f.			refinement, humanity.
longissimē, adv.			very far.
pauci, ¹ ae, a,			few.
prae-sūm,	prae-essē,	prae-fui,	be over, rule over, be in command of.
prō-sūm,	prōd-essē,	prō-fui,	be for, be useful.
sūper-sūm,	sūper-essē,	sūper-fui,	be over, survive.

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Multi¹ sūperfuērunt. 2. Multi³ sūpersūmus. 3. Pauci sūpērērīmus. 4. Caesar suis milītib⁴ ādērit. 5. Sī Caesar suis milītībus nōn adsit.⁵ 6. Consul urbi praecerat. 7. Lābiēnus oppīdo⁶ Gēnēvae⁷ pracērit. 8. Consul lēgiōni praeest. 9. Sī Caesar multis¹ prōfuisset. 10. Multis prōsīmus.⁸ 11. Nōn deest consilium. 12. Consūles⁹ dēsūmus. 13. Belgae a hūmānītate prōvinciae¹⁰ longissīme¹¹ absunt. 14. Sī deus¹² adsit.

Write in Latin.

1. Many¹ will survive. 2. Few³ (of us) survive. 3. The consul will assist his soldiers. 4. If the consul should not assist his soldiers. 5. Let⁸ us assist the soldiers. 6. Labiēnus was in command of the legion. 7. If Labiēnus were¹³ in command of the legion. 8. If we consuls⁹ had been wanting.

Notes.

¹ *pauci* and *multi*, like the corresponding English words *few* and *many*, are often used substantively, i. e. as nouns. Parse them, however, as adjectives modifying either the omitted subject of the verb, as in Example 1, or its omitted object, as in Example 4. *Pauci* is rarely used in the Singular.

² Observe that in *ad-sum* the *d* of *ad* becomes *f* before *f*.

³ *multi* modifies *nos* (*we*), the omitted subject of *supersumus*; render, *many of us survive*.

⁴ See 67 and Example 2; translate as if it were an Accusative.

⁵ See LN. XXVI., EXAMPLE 1.

⁶ See 67.

⁷ See 25.

⁸ See LN. XXVI., EXAMPLE 5.

⁹ *consules* is an appositive to *nos* (*we*), the omitted subject of *desumus*.

¹⁰ See 40.

¹¹ See LN. XXVI., NOTE 5.

¹² See 20.

¹³ See LN. XXVI., EXAMPLE 2.



LESSON XXVIII.

CONJUGATION OF POSSUM. — USE OF THE INFINITIVE.

68. Possūm. A. & G. 120, *b* : A. & S. 154, REM. 7 : B. 109, I., *b* : B. & M. 412 : G. 115 : H. 290, II., including fine print : C. 72.

69. Infinitive without Subject Accusative. A. & G. 271 : A. & S. 271 : B. 315, *c* : B. & M. 1138 : G. 424 : H. 533 : C. 241.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Mīlites pugnāre* (69) *possunt*, the soldiers ARE ABLE to fight; or the soldiers CAN fight.
2. *Mīlites pugnāre pōtērant*, the soldiers WERE ABLE to fight; or the soldiers COULD fight.
3. *Mīlites pugnāre pōtērunť*, the soldiers WILL BE ABLE to fight.
4. *Mīlites pugnāre pōtuerunt*, the soldiers HAVE BEEN ABLE to fight; or the soldiers COULD HAVE fought.
5. *Sī mīlites pugnāre possint*, if the soldiers SHOULD BE ABLE to fight.
6. *Sī mīlites pugnāre possent*, if the soldiers WERE ABLE to fight.

7. *Sī milītes pugnāre pōtuisent, if the soldiers HAD BEEN ABLE to fight.*

8. *Dicit milītes (53) pugnāre (69) potuissē (52), he says that the soldiers WERE ABLE to fight.*

Conjugate and give a synopsis¹ of each form of **POSSŪM**; parse the Infinitives.²

1. Consul oppīdum expugnāre pōtest.³ 2. Consul oppīdum expugnāre pōtērāt. 3. Consul oppīdum expugnāre pōtērīt. 4. Consul oppīdum expugnāre pōtuīt. 5. Dicit consūlem⁴ oppīdum expugnāre pōtuissē.⁵ 6. Sī consul oppīdum expugnāre possīt. 7. Sī consul oppīdum expugnāre possēt. 8. Sī consul oppīdum expugnāre pōtuissēt. 9. Pōpulus Rōmānus Cassium⁶ consūlem⁶ creāre non pōtērīt. 10. Tīto⁷ filiam meam (*my*) in mātřmōnium dāre non possūm. 11. Consūli⁸ adessē pōtērīs. 12. Milītes agros hostium vastāre pōtērunt. 13. Amīcis prōdessē possūmūs. 14. Nēmo (*no one*) sīne virtūte bonus essē pōtest.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XIV., NOTE 1 and LN. XXVI., NOTE 1.

² See LN. XVII., NOTE 3.

³ Observe carefully how each tense of **possūm** is translated in the EXAMPLES: What two words unite to form **possūm**? Which part of **pōtis** is used? What does the final **t** become before **s**? What becomes of **f** in the Perfect Tenses?

⁴ See 53.

⁵ See 52.

⁶ See 58.

⁷ See 39.

⁸ See 67.



LESSON XXIX.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD OF AMO.

70. Learn the Subjunctive Active of amō. A. & G. 118, 1, ACTIVE VOICE, for the Verb-Endings of the Subjunctive; 128:

A. & S. 155: B. 72; 74, a; 75: B. & M. 282: G. 119; 120: H. 205; 243; 245: C. p. 104; pp. 76, 77.

Observe that the *Stems* and *Personal Endings* are the same as those of the Indicative.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Sī urbem occūpēmus, if WE SHOULD OCCUPY the city.*
2. *Sī urbem occūpārēmus, if WE OCCUPIED the city.*
3. *Sī urbem occūpāvērīmus, if WE SHOULD HAVE OCCUPIED the city; or if WE SHOULD OCCUPY the city.*
4. *Sī urbem occūpāvissēmus, if WE HAD OCCUPIED the city.*
5. *Ut¹ urbem occūpēmus, that WE MAY OCCUPY the city.*
6. *Ut urbem occūpārēmus, that WE MIGHT OCCUPY the city.*
7. *Urbem occūpēmus, LET US OCCUPY the city.*

Conjugate, analyze, and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. *Sī Sēquāni Helvētios jūvent.²* 2. *Sī Rōmāni Germānos jūvārent.* 3. *Sī rex Helvētios jūvērit.* 4. *Sī Aquītāni Sēquānos jūvissent.* 5. *Ut¹ consul Helvētios jūvet.* 6. *Ut pāter suos filios jūvāret.* 7. *Allobrōges jūvēmus.* 8. *Pueros vōcēmus.* 9. *Concīlium Gallōrum convōcēmus.* 10. *Sī Caesāri³ filiam suam in matrīmōnium det.* 11. *Sī cum proximis cīvītātibus⁴ pācem et āmicītiā confirmes.* 12. *Ut milītes circum Rōmam hiēmārent.* 13. *Ut pōpūlus Ariovistū⁵ rēgem⁵ creāret.* 14. *Ut consul oppīdum Gēnēvam⁶ occūpāret.* 15. *Ut milītes Rōmāni agros Gallōrum vastent.* 16. *Ut suis cōpiis⁷ regna concīliāret.*

Write in Latin.

1. If we should love (our) friends.
2. If we loved (our) friends.
3. If we had loved (our) friends.
4. That we may harass the enemy.
5. That we might harass the enemy.
6. Let us love friends.
7. If you should import ripe corn.
8. If you had imported ripe corn.
9. Let us aid the boys.
10. Let us elect the man⁵ senator.⁵

Notes and Questions.

¹ *ut* in this Lesson is a *final conjunction* and is equivalent to *that, in order that*.

² Imitate the Examples in translating the different tenses of the Subjunctive Mood. Define the Subjunctive Mood (65). Define the Indicative Mood (26). What tenses has the Subjunctive? The Indicative? Name the three Stems of *jūvō*.

³ See 39.

⁴ See 16. Name the prepositions which are used with the Ablative.

⁵ See 58.

⁶ See 25.

⁷ *suis cōpiis, with his troops.* See 54.



LESSON XXX.

REVIEW OF AMO. — TWO ACCUSATIVES.

Review the entire Active Voice of *āmō*.

71. Two Accusatives. A. & G. 239, c, REM.: A. & S. 231: B. 217, RULE IX.: B. & M. 734: G. 333: H. 374: C. 127.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Caesārem sententiam rōgāvit, he asked Caesar (his) opinion.*
2. *Caesar Aeduos frūmentum flāgītāvit, Caesar demanded corn of the Aedui.*
3. *Rex pōpūlum sermōnem cēlāvit, the king concealed the conversation from the people.*

VOCABULARY.

<i>cēlō,</i>	<i>ārē,</i>	<i>āvī,</i>	<i>ātūm,</i>	<i>conceal.</i>
<i>commeō,</i>	<i>ārē,</i>	<i>āvī,</i>	<i>ātūm,</i>	<i>go back and forth.</i>
<i>expectō,</i>	<i>ārē,</i>	<i>āvī,</i>	<i>ātūm,</i>	<i>await, expect.</i>
<i>flāgītō,</i>	<i>ārē,</i>	<i>āvī,</i>	<i>ātūm,</i>	<i>demand.</i>
<i>grāvītēr,</i>	adv.			<i>severely.</i>
<i>mercātōr,</i>	<i>ōris,</i>	m.		<i>trader, merchant.</i>
<i>mīnimē,</i>	adv.			<i>least, by no means.</i>
<i>rōgō,</i>	<i>ārē,</i>	<i>āvī,</i>	<i>ātūm,</i>	<i>ask.</i>

saepē, adv.

often.

sententiā, ae, f.

opinion.

sermo, ōnis, m.

discourse, conversation.

vulnerē, āre, āvi, ātūm,

wound.

Analyze¹ and parse.

1. Lābiēnus suos² milītes³ exspectābat.⁴ 2. Galli mercātōres exspectāvēre.⁵ 3. Tītus nunciat Gallos mercātōres exspectāvisse.⁶ 4. Milītes Sēquānos grāvīter vulnerāvērunt. 5. Caesar princīpes Aeduōrum grāvīter accūsāt. 6. Dicit Caesārem princīpes Aeduōrum grāvīter accūsāre. 7. Mercātōres ad⁷ Belgas commeant.⁷ 8. Mercātōres ād Belgas nōn saepe commeant. 9. Mīnīme⁸ ād Belgas mercātōres saepe commeant. 10. Commeāte,⁹ mercātōres, ād Belgas. 11. Consul Germānos cōpias flāgītābit. 12. Consul Gallos frūmentum flāgītāt. 13. Sī consul Aeduos cōpias flāgītēt. 14. Caesar consūlem sententiam rōgābit. 15. Dicit Caesārem consūlem sententiam rōgātūrum essē. 16. Tītum sermōnem nōn cēlābo. 17. Sī Ariovistum sermōnem cēlāvissem. 18. Ut rēgem sermōnem cēlārem. 19. Aeduos frūmentum flāgītēmus.¹⁰

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XIII., NOTE 1.² See LN. VI., NOTE 1.³ See LN. IV., NOTE 1.⁴ See LN. XVIII., NOTE 3.⁵ What are the two uses of the Perfect Indicative? (43)⁶ See LN. XVII., Examples, Notes on the Examples, and NOTE 3.⁷ ad — commeant, go-back-and-forth to, may be rendered visit.⁸ mīnīme modifies saepe.⁹ See 47.¹⁰ See LN. XXIX., Example 7.

What Stems has each verb and how are they found? Which tenses denote incomplete and which completed action? What are the Personal Endings of the Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, Active Voice? Of the Imperative? What are the Endings of the Infinitives? Of the Participles? Which tenses of the Indicative are formed upon the Present Stem? Which of the Subjunctive? Which of each are formed upon the Perfect Stem?

LESSON XXXI.

VERBS : PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO.

72. Definition and Personal Endings of the Passive Voice.

A. & G. 111; 116; 118: A. & S. 141, 2; 147, 3, *Passive*: B. 44; 64, a, *PASSIVE*: B. & M. 262, 2; 333, *PASSIVE VOICE*: G. 205; 111: H. 195, II.; 247, *PERSON, PASS., MEANING*: C. 64; p. 103.

73. Learn the Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Passive of *amāre*. A. & G. 129: A. & S. 156: B. 74, b: B. & M. 283: G. 121: H. 206: C. p. 78.

a. Observe that the Active and Passive Voices of these three tenses differ in form only in the Personal Endings: e. g. *amā-mūs*, *we love*; *amā-mūr*, *we ARE loved*: *amābī-tis*, *you will love*; *amābī-mīnī*, *you will BE loved*. The only exception is the Second Person Singular of the Future, which, in the Active Voice, has *bi*, and in the Passive, *bē*: e. g. *amā-bi-s*, *you will love*; *amā-bē-ris* or *rē*, *you will BE loved*. It is a good practice to write both the Active and Passive Voices side by side on the blackboard, and compare them with each other.

VOCABULARY.

<i>appellō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,</i>	<i>name, call.</i>
<i>Castīcūs, ī, m.</i>	<i>Casticus.</i>
<i>nostr̄, nostrā, nostrūm,</i>	<i>our.</i>
<i>occultō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,</i>	<i>hide, conceal.</i>

Conjugate the verbs; name their elements;¹ parse the nouns.

1. *Oppīda expugnābuntūr.* 2. *Nostri agri vastābuntūr.*
 3. *Hōmo igni² crēmābītūr.* 4. *Concīlium Gallōrum convōcābātūr.* 5. *Nostrā linguā³ Galli⁴ appellantūr.* 6. *Ariovistus rex⁴ atque amīcus appellābātūr.* 7. *Lucius Cassius consul⁵ amīcus⁴ appellābītūr.* 8. *Rex⁴ appellābēris.* 9. *Divitiācus frāter⁵ Dumnōrīgis amīcus⁴ pōpūli Rōmāni appellābātūr.* 10. *Pāter Castīci pōpūli Rōmāni amīcus appellābātūr.* 11. *In tantā multītūdīne fūga occultātūr.* 12. *Orātiōne⁶ Lisci Dumnōrix Divitiāci frāter dēsīgnātūr.* 13. *Dumnōrix ab Aeduis⁶ accūsābātūr.* 14. *A Caesāre⁶ accūsābīmīnī.*

Write in Latin.

1. The town will be stormed. 2. Our field will be laid waste. 3. The men will be burned with fire. 4. (In) our language they are called Sequani. 5. They will be called kings. 6. He was called a friend of the Roman people. 7. In so great a multitude our flight will be concealed. 8. The brothers of Dumnorix were accused by the Gauls. 9. Dumnorix is described by Caesar's speech.

Notes.

¹ See LN. X., NOTE 4, and LN. XII., NOTE 1.

² See 54.

³ See 54 and LN. I., NOTE 5.

⁴ See 64.

⁵ See 25.

⁶ With verbs in the Passive Voice *the agent*, i. e. the person by whom anything is done, is expressed by *the Ablative with a, ab*; *the instrument*, i. e. the thing *by means of which* or *with which* anything is done, by *the Ablative without a preposition*: e. g. *He is overcome BY THE SOLDIER, a milite sūpērātūr*; *he is overcome BY the soldier's WEAPONS, telis militis sūpērātūr*.



LESSON XXXII.

VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO (*continued*).

74. Learn the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive of *amō*. A. & G. 118; 129: A. & S. 156: B. 76: B. & M. 281, 6, 4; 283: G. 122: H. 206: C. p. 79.

VOCABULARY.

arx, arcis, f.

citadel.

comportō, arē, avi, atum,

collect.

enunciō, arē, avi, atum,

divulge, report.

equēs, itis, m.

horseman, cavalrman.

praetor, oris, m.

praetor.

Conjugate and give a Synopsis¹ of each verb in the Indicative Passive; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Frūmentum ab Aeduis² comportātum³ est. 2. Magna cōpia frūmenti ab Aeduis comportatā ērat. 3. Obsīdes Helvētiis⁴ dāti⁵ ērant. 4. Multi obsīdes Helvētiis ā Sēquānis dāti ērant. 5. Nullae⁶ arces expugnātae⁷ sunt. 6. Nostra consilia⁸ hostibus⁹ ēnunciāta sunt. 7. Nostra consilia hostibus ab Aeduis ēnunciāta ērant. 8. Caesar ā Rōmānis praetor⁶ creātus³ est. 9. Praetōres⁶ creāti ērimus. 10. Nostri agri vastāti sunt. 11. Nostra oppīda expugnāta sunt. 12. Tantā multītūdo ēquītum sūpērāta⁸ est. 13. In tantā multītūdīne ēquītum nostra fūga occultata est. 14. Cōpiae Caesāris ab Germānis ūno proelio⁷ sūpērātae sunt. 15. Equītes ā Caesāre grāvīter⁸ accūsāti sunt.

Write in Latin.

1. An abundance of corn has been collected. 2. The citadels will have been stormed. 3. The citadels had been stormed by the Romans.² 4. Caesar's plans have been reported to the Gauls⁴ by the Germans. 5. Cassius had been elected praetor.⁶ 6. A large multitude of cavalrymen has been overcome. 7. The troops of Cassius had been overcome in a single battle.⁷ 8. The troops of Cassius have been overcome by the Germans. 9. We have been severely⁸ censured by the consul.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XIV., NOTE 1.

² See LN. XXXI., NOTE 6.

³ Observe that the Participle, like the predicate adjective (64), agrees with the subject of the verb in *gender*, *number*, and *case*.

⁴ See 39.

⁵ See 24.

⁶ See 64. What was a praetor? (See Gen. Vy.) What was a consul? How often were these officers elected?

⁷ *ūno proelio*, in a single battle. See 54.

⁸ See LN. XXVI., NOTE 5.

LESSON XXXIII.

VERBS : PASSIVE VOICE OF **AMO** (*continued*).

75. Learn the Imperative, Infinitives, and Participles of the Passive Voice of **amō**. A. & G. 116, *b*; 118, 1, 2; 129: A. & S. 156: B. 64, *b*; 65; 66; 74, *b*; 76: B. & M. 283: G. 121; 122: H. 247, 3; 248; 206: C. pp. 79, 80.

Conjugate the Imperatives; name the Stem and Ending of each verb; parse the Infinitives and Nouns.

1. Accūsārē, accūsāmīnī.¹ 2. Accūsātōr, accūsantōr. 3. Jūvārē, jūvātōr. 4. Vōcāmīnī, vōcantōr. 5. Dīcit suum frātre^m creātū^m essē.² 6. Dīcit frātre^m Divitiāci dēsīgnātū^m essē. 7. Dīcit montē ā Iābiēno occūpārī. 8. Nēgāt³ nostrōs agrōs vastātōs essē. 9. Nēgāt cūm proxīmīs cīvītātīb^{us} pācem confirmātū^m essē. 10. Dīcit regnū^m īn cīvītātē suā occūpātū^m essē. 11. Nunciāt Caesāre^m creātū^m essē consūlem. 12. Nunciāt Cassiū^m praetōre^m creātū^m essē. 13. Dīcit Ariovistū^m ā Rōmānīs rēgem appellātū^m essē.

Notes and Questions.

¹ How is the Imperative used? (47)

² creātū^m essē, *has been elected, or was elected.* See LN. XVII., References to the Grammar, Examples, and Notes on the Examples.

³ nēgāt, *he says not; lit. he denies: HE SAYS our fields have NOT been laid waste.*

Upon which Stem are the different tenses of the Indicative Active formed? Of the Indicative Passive? The Imperative Active and Passive? The Infinitives Active and Passive? The Participles Active and Passive?

How many Participles has a transitive verb? A. & G. 109, *a*: A. & S. 148, 1, (2.): B. 54; 55: B. & M. 269: H. 200, IV., NOTE: C. 65, 4.

LESSON XXXIV.

VERBS : PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO (*continued*).

76. Learn the Subjunctive Passive of *āmō*. A. & G. 129 : A. & S. 156 : B. 74, b ; 76 : B. & M. 283 : G. 121 ; 122 : H. 206 : C. pp. 78, 79.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Sī hōmo crēmētūr*, *if the man SHOULD BE BURNED.*
2. *Sī hōmo crēmārētūr*, *if the man WERE BEING BURNED.*
3. *Sī hōmo crēmātūs sīt*, *if the man SHOULD HAVE BEEN BURNED ;*
or if the man SHOULD BE BURNED.
4. *Sī hōmo crēmātūs essēt*, *if the man HAD BEEN BURNED ; or*
if the man WERE BURNED.
5. *Sī sententiam rōgētūr*, *if HE SHOULD BE ASKED (his) opinion.*

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. *Sī Caesar sententiam*¹ *rōgātūs essēt.* 2. *Sī sententiam rōgātūs sīm.* 3. *Sī sententiam rōgārēris.* 4. *Sī crēmātī es-sēmūs.* 5. *Sī Ariovistus rex*² *creātūs essēt.* 6. *Sī mīles vulnērētūr.* 7. *Sī non vulnērātūs essēs.* 8. *Sī Ariovistus amīcus pōpūli Rōmāni appellārētūr.* 9. *Sī obsīdes Rōmānis*³ *ā Gallis*⁴ *nōn dentūr.* 10. *Sī obsīdes Germānis āb Helvētiis nōn dātī essent.* 11. *Sī cōpia frūmenti importētūr.* 12. *Sī cōpia frūmenti nōn importātā essēt.* 13. *Sī Divitiācus ā pōpūlo Rōmāno rex appellātūs essēt.* 14. *Sī rex atque amīcus ā Helvētiis appellārēris.* 15. *Sī sententiam rōgātī essēmūs.* 16. *Sī sententiam rōgātī sītis.* 17. *Sī rēges creatī essētis.* 18. *Sī consules creatī essēmūs.*

Write in Latin.

1. If I should be asked (my) opinion. 2. If you were asked (your) opinion. 3. If you had been burned. 4. If Cassius had been elected consul. 5. If Cassius had not been called a friend of the Gauls. 6. If hostages should be given

to the Germans by the consul. 7. If the soldiers had not been wounded. 8. If we had not been wounded. 9. If an abundance of corn were being imported. 10. If you should be elected consul.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 71.² See 64.³ See 39.

⁴ Which prepositions are used with the Ablative? (16) How is the agent of a verb in the Passive Voice expressed in Latin? (LN. XXXI., NOTE 6.) How is the instrument expressed? What is meant by the agent? By the instrument?



LESSON XXXV.

DEPONENT VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION.

77. Definition. A. & G. 135: A. & S. 142, 4, (a.): B. 46: B. & M. 304: G. 211: H. 195, II. 2: C. 79.

78. Learn the entire Deponent Verb of the First Conjugation. A. & G. page 88, *mīror*: A. & S. 161: B. 93, *cōnor*; 55, *second sentence*: B. & M. 306, *second part*; 307: G. 141; 142: H. 231; 232: C. p. 99.

VOCABULARY.

<i>cōnor</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> , ¹	<i>attempt, try.</i>
<i>glōrior</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> ,	<i>glory, boast.</i>
<i>hortor</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> ,	<i>exhort, urge.</i>
<i>laetor</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> ,	<i>rejoice, exult.</i>
<i>mīror</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> ,	<i>admire, wonder at.</i>
<i>mōror</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> ,	<i>tarry, delay.</i>
<i>vāgor</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> ,	<i>wander about.</i>
<i>pōpūlor</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> ,	<i>ravage, lay waste.</i>

¹ The principal parts of a deponent verb are the *Present Indicative*, *Present Infinitive*, *Perfect Indicative*; e. g. *cōnor*, *cōnārī*, *cōnātūs sūm*.

Conjugate and give a complete synopsis¹ of each verb.

1. Cōnāmur, cōnābāmur, cōnābīmur. 2. Glōriātus sum, glōriātus ēram, glōriātus ēro. 3. Sī hortētur, sī hortārētur. 4. Sī hortātus sis, sī hortātus esses. 5. Laetāre, laetāmīni, laetēmur.² 6. Dicit Caesārem laetātum essē. 7. Mirāri³ nōn possūmus. 8. Vāgāri³ cōnēmur.² 9. Vāgāri nōn pōtērīmus. 10. Caesar ād⁴ Rōmam mōrātus est. 11. Helvētii agros Aeduōrum pōpūlābantur. 12. Ut vāgārentur.⁵

Write in Latin.

1. You are exhorting, you were exhorting, you will exhort. 2. You tarried in the vicinity of Rome; you had tarried; you will have tarried. 3. If he should tarry, if he tarried. 4. If he had tarried near Rome. 5. Let us tarry in the vicinity of Geneva. 6. They can⁶ not rejoice. 7. They could⁶ not rejoice. 8. Let us try² to rejoice.

Notes.

¹ A complete Synopsis of cōnor, for example, is as follows: *Indicative*, cōnor, cōnābar, cōnābor, cōnātus sum, cōnātus ēram, cōnātus ēro; *Subjunctive*, cōner, cōnārer, cōnātus sim, cōnātus essem; *Imperative*, cōnāre, cōnātor; *Infinitives*, cōnāri, cōnātus essē, cōnātūrus essē; *Participles*, cōnans, cōnandus, cōnātus, cōnātūrus; *Gerund*, cōnandi; *Supines*, cōnātum, cōnātu.

² See LN. XXIX., EXAMPLE 7.

³ See 69.

⁴ ād with the name of a town may often be rendered *near*, *in the vicinity of*.

⁵ Render by the Imperfect Indicative.

⁶ *Can* and *could* in these and similar sentences are equivalent to *are able*, *were able*; translate them, therefore, by the proper tense of the Indicative of possūm, and the principal verb by the Present Infinitive.

LESSON XXXVI.

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE. — COMPLEX AND COMPOUND SENTENCES.

79. Ablative of Cause. A. & G. 245 : A. & S. 247 : B. 257, RULE XLII. : B. & M. 873 : G. 407 : H. 413 ; 416 : C. 166.

80. Complex and Compound Sentences. A. & G. 180, *a-f* : A. & S. 201, 11–13 : B. 288, *a-f* : B. & M. 1407–1409 ; 1411 : G. 474, 1–4 : H. 348 ; 349 : C. 107, 2, 3.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Puēri ēquis*¹ (79) *laetantur*, *boys rejoice* IN HORSES.
2. *Helvētīi suā victōriā*¹ (79) *glōriābantur*, *the Helvetii were boasting* BECAUSE OF *their* VICTORY ; or *the Helvetii were glorying* IN *their* VICTORY.
3. *Orgetōrix Casticum hortātur ūt regnum occūpet*,² *Orgetorix urges Casticus to seize the royal power.*
4. *Miles nōn laetētur, sī vulnērētur*,³ *the soldier would not rejoice, if he should be wounded.*
5. *Sī multi vulnērātī essent, nōn laetātī essēmus*, *if many had been wounded, we should not have rejoiced.*
6. *Arīovistus fuit rex ēt Caesar fuit consul*,⁴ *Arionistus was king and Caesar was consul.*

Analyze the sentences and parse.

- * 1. *Impērātor milītībus bōnis laetātur.* 2. *Rōmāni suā victōriā nōn glōriābantur.* 3. *Sēquāni victōriā suā nōn glōriābantur.* 4. *Nēgat*⁵ *Sēquānos victōriā glōriātūros essē.* 5. *Milītes hortābīmur ūt agros pōpūlentur.* 6. *Impērātor milītes suos hortātus est*⁶ *ūt agros Gallōrum pōpūlentur.* 7. *Dumnōrigem hortābor ūt regnum in*⁷ *suā civītate occūpet.* 8. *Sī igni*⁸ *crēner, nōn laetēris.* 9. *Sī Cassius praetor*⁹ *creātus esset, laetātus essem.* 10. *Sī Caesar sermōnem*¹⁰ *milītes*¹⁰ *cēlet, laeter.* 11. *Sī dux milītībus*¹¹ *adesse*¹² *possit, laentur.* 12. *Hortēmur*¹³ *Helvētios ūt cūm proximis civītātībus pācem*

ēt āmicītiā confirmēt. 13. Sī Caesar multos obsīdes dēdis-
set hostībus,¹⁴ hostes laetāti essent. 14. Puer ērat mālus ēt
puella ērat bōna. 15. Consul ābest ēt praetor est aeger.⁹

Notes.

¹ In Examples 1 and 2 *ēquis* and *victōriā* are the cause of the rejoicing and boasting, and hence are in the Ablative in accordance with the rule referred to in 79.

² Example 3 is a *complex sentence*, because it is made up of a *principal clause*, *Orgetōrix Castlōum hortātur*, and a *subordinate clause*, *ut regnum occūpet*. Observe that *ut occūpet* is rendered by the Infinitive to *seize*; lit. *that he may seize*.

³ Example 4 is a *complex sentence*; *principal clause*, *miles non laetātur*; *subordinate clause*, *si vulnerētur*: *si* and *ūt* are *subordinate conjunctions*; hence the clauses which they introduce are subordinate clauses.

⁴ Example 6 is a *compound sentence*, because it is made up of clauses which are independent of each other. Such clauses are called *coördinate clauses*; and the conjunctions which connect them, *coördinate conjunctions*.

⁵ See LN. XXXIII., NOTE 3.

⁶ *hortātus est*, *has urged*.

⁷ See LN. XIII., NOTE 5. Which is this?

⁸ See 54.

⁹ See 64.

¹⁰ See 71.

¹¹ See 67.

¹² See 69.

¹³ See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.

¹⁴ See 39.



LESSON XXXVII.

ADJECTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION.

81. A. & G. 84, lēvis, ācēr, b, *Case-Forms*: A. & S. 108; 109; 113, 1; 114, 1: B. 156; 157, lēvis: B. & M. 193, RULES 1, 2; 196, II, mītis; 198, ācēr: G. 81; 82: H. 152; 153; 154, tristis: C. 42; 43.

VOCABULARY.

ālācēr,¹ crīs, crē,

lively, eager.

brēvis,² ē,

short, brief.

cēlēr,¹ cēlērīs, cēlērē,

swift.

difficilis, ² ě,	<i>difficult, impracticable.</i>
ēquestēr, ¹ trīs, trě,	<i>of cavalry.</i>
facilis, ² ě,	<i>easy, practicable.</i>
fāmilīā, ae, f.	<i>household, family.</i>
fortis, ² ě,	<i>brave, courageous, strong.</i>
itēr, itīnērīs, n.	<i>journey, route, march.</i>
jūdiclūm, ī, n.	<i>trial.</i>
omnis, ² ě,	<i>all, every.</i>
tristis, ² ě,	<i>sad.</i>

¹ Declined like **acōr**.

² Declined like **lōvis, mītis, facilis, tristis**.

Analyze and parse.

1. Ex omni¹ Galliā. 2. Cūm omnībūs cōpiīs. 3. Pēr omnēs urbēs. 4. Pēr tōtām² urbēm. 5. Equī sunt cēlērēs.³ 6. Nēgāt⁴ ēquōs essē cēlērēs. 7. Sī ēquītēs fuissent cēlērēs, rex laetātūs essēt.⁵ 8. Tempūs est brěvē. 9. Helvētīi oppidā suā omniā incendunt (*burn*). 10. Fuīt proeliūm ēquestřē. 11. Dicīt fūtūrūm essē proeliūm ēquestřē. 12. Sēquānī fuērunt tristes. 13. Itēr¹² ērāt difficīlē. 14. Sī itēr sīt facīlē, laetēr.⁶ 15. Pūtō itēr essē facīlē. 16. Tītūs Lābiēnūs lēgātūs⁷ suōs milītēs hortātūr ūt⁹ fortēs sint.⁹ 17. Orgētōrix ād jūdīciūm omnēm suām fāmilīam cōēgīt (*brought*). 18. Orgētōrix Helvētiōs hortātūs est¹³ ūt¹⁰ dē finībūs suis cūm omnībūs cōpiīs exīrent.¹⁰ 19. Vīrīs¹¹ fortībūs laetōr.

Notes.

¹ See LN. VI., NOTE 1.

² See 24.

³ See 64.

⁴ See LN. XXXIII., NOTE 3.

⁵ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 5.

⁶ See LN. XXVI., Ex. 1 and LN. XXXVI., Ex. 4.

⁷ See 25.

⁹ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 3.

¹⁰ ūt—*exirent, to go out.*

¹¹ See 79.

¹² See A. & G. 60, c: A. & S. 57: B. 138: B. & M. 104: C. 29, 10, exc. 2.

¹³ *hortatus est: urged.*

LESSON XXXVIII.

ADJECTIVES : THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

82. A. & G. 85, a, b; 87, a, c : A. & S. 111; 113, 2, 3; 114 : B. *all of* 158 : B. & M. *all of* 193 : G. 83; 84; 85, 1-3 : H. *all of* 155-158 : C. 45.

VOCABULARY.

audax, ācīs,	<i>bold, audacious.</i>
conditio, ōnīs, f.	<i>condition.</i>
contūmēliā, ae, f.	<i>insult.</i>
divēs, itīs,	<i>rich.</i>
fēlix, icīs,	<i>happy.</i>
flens, entīs,	<i>weeping.</i>
implōrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>beseech, implore.</i>
injūriā, ae, f.	<i>injury.</i>
mūliēr, ērīs, f.	<i>woman.</i>
ōriens, entīs,	<i>rising.</i>
pār, pārīs,	<i>equal.</i>
princeps, ipīs,	<i>first, chief.</i>
rēcens, entīs,	<i>recent.</i>
sōl, sōlīs, m.	<i>sun.</i>
spectō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>look, front.</i>
vētūs, ērīs,	<i>old, ancient.</i>

Analyze and parse.

1. Vētērēs causae. 2. Vētūs urbs¹ est Rōmā. 3. Mēmōriā vētēris contūmēliae. 4. In pārēm conditiōnēm servitūtīs.
5. Rēcentiū injūriarū mēmōriā. 6. Mūliērēs ērant fēlicēs.
7. Mūliērēs flentēs Caesārēm implōrābant. 8. Helvētiī flentes pācēm pētiērunt (*sought*). 9. Hortēmūr² milītēs ūt³ ālacrēs et audācēs sint.³ 10. Belgae spectant īn⁴ ōrientēm sōlēm.⁵
11. Lēgatiōnīs princīpēm⁶ lōcūnī⁷ obtīnēbant (*they held*).
12. Rōmānī divītēs fuērunt. 13. Germānī nōn pārēs sunt nostrīs milītībūs.⁸

Write in Latin.

1. There⁹ will be a battle of cavalry. 2. Our soldiers are brave. 3. Let us exhort our soldiers to be brave. 4. Geneva is an old town. 5. All¹⁰ are not happy. 6. Our leaders will be bold. 7. All cannot be¹¹ rich. 8. Weeping women will implore the consul. 9. Gauls are not equal to our cavalrymen.

Notes.

¹ See 64.² See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.

³ How is the Subjunctive with *ut* to be translated after verbs signifying *ask, command, exhort, persuade, please, strive, urge*? ANSW. By the Present Infinitive. See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 3.

⁴ *in, towards.*⁵ See B. 135: B. & M. 121: H. 60: C. 37, 5.⁶ *principēm* is here used as an adjective; it is often a noun.⁷ How is *locūs* declined in the Plural? See VY., LN. VIII.⁸ *militibūs* is a *Dative*.⁹ See LN. XXV., NOTE 2, *last part*.¹⁰ *omnes*, like the English *all*, is often used substantively.¹¹ *cannot be, esse nōn possunt.*

LESSON XXXIX.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

83. A. & G. 89, *a*: A. & S. 122, 1-6; 124, 1-3; 125, 1: B. 161; 162; 163, *a*: B. & M. 214-218: G. 86; 88, 1: H. 160-162; 163, 1: C. 47; 48.

84. *Declension of Comparatives.* A. & G. 86, *a*: A. & S. 110: B. 157, REMARK: B. & M. 127: G. 87: H. 154, NOTE 1: C. 44.

VOCABULARY.

<i>altūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>high, deep.</i>
<i>fortūnā, ae, f.</i>	<i>fortune.</i>
<i>grāvīs, ē,</i>	<i>heavy, grievous.</i>
<i>latūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>broad, wide.</i>

longē, adv.	by far.
miser, miserā, miserum,	wretched, pitiable.
nobilis, ē,	well-known, noble.
potens, entis,	powerful.
quā, adv.	than.
utilis, ē,	useful.

Compare and decline the adjectives.

1. Jūrā est mons¹ altissimū.² 2. Caesār dicit Jūrā essē montē altissimū. 3. Rhēnūs est flūmēn lātissimū ēt altissimū. 4. Hōmīnī³ nobilissimō ac⁶ pōtentissimō ādērām. 5. Omnīū⁴ fortissimī sunt Belgae. 6. Apūd Helvētiōs longē nobilissimū ēt ditissimū¹⁰ fuīt Orgētōrix. 7. Pēr trēs (*three*) pōtentissimōs pōpūlōs tōtiūs Galliae. 8. Nostrae filiae pulcherrimae sunt. 9. Milītēs hortēmūr ūt fortiōrēs sint.⁵ 10. Sī tempūs fuissēt brēviūs, nōn laetātūs essēm. 11. Milītēs fuērunt Caesārī ūtilissimī. 12. Dicit essē mīsēriōrēm grāviōremquē⁷ fortunām⁸ Sēquānōrū quā⁹ rēliqūrū Gallōrū.

Write in Latin.

1. The bravest soldiers. 2. The most beautiful women. 3. The broadest rivers. 4. The highest mountains. 5. Divitiacus was the noblest of all. 6. Friends are most useful to a man. 7. Caesar says (that) the Rhine is a very deep river. 8. The fortune of the Gauls was more grievous than (that) of the Germans. 9. Let us urge the boys to be very brave.

Notes.

¹ What is the gender of **mons**? Of **Jūrā**?

² *Superlatives* may sometimes be rendered by the *positive* with *very*: e. g. **mons altissimū**, a *very high mountain*. They are adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

³ **67**.

⁴ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 10.

⁵ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

⁶ See LN. XX., NOTE 1.

⁷ What is the difference in force of **ēt**, **quē**, and **atquē**? See LN. XXIII.,

NOTE 2. What are appended words called? See VY., LN. XXIII., NOTE on *quē*, last part.

⁸ *fortūnām* is subject of *essē*.

⁹ When *quām* signifying *than* is immediately followed by a Genitive, supply in translation *that*: e. g. *quām Rōmānōrūm*, *than THAT of the Romans*.

¹⁰ See General Vocabulary under *divēs* and *dis*.

LESSON XL.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (*continued*).

85. A. & G. 89, *b-e*; 90; 91, *a*: A. & S. 125, 2-5; 126, 1: B. 163, *b-d*; 164, *a, b*: B. & M. 219-222: G. 88, 2-4; 89, REMARKS 1, 2: H. 163, 2, 3; 165; 166; 169, 1, 2; 170: C. 49.

VOCABULARY.

Alpēs, iūm, f.	<i>the Alps.</i>
cītēriōr, cītēriūs,	<i>hither.</i>
extrā, prep. w. acc.	<i>without, beyond.</i>
infēriōr, infēriūs,	<i>lower.</i>
primūs, ā, ūm,	<i>first.</i>
Sēgūsīānī, ōrūm, m.	<i>the Segusiani.</i>
Sēquānūs, ā, ūm,	<i>of the Sequani.</i>
sūpēriōr, sūpēriūs,	<i>higher, upper.</i>
ultēriōr, ultēriūs,	<i>farther.</i>

Translate and parse.

1. Mājōr¹ multītūdo Germanōrūm² Rhēnum transībāt (*was crossing*). 2. Carrōrūm² maxīmus nūmērus. 3. Cum maxīmo milītum² nūmēro. 4. Belgae pertīnent (*extend*) ūd infēriōrem partem flūmīnis Rhēni. 5. Galli lōca sūpēriōra occūpant. 6. Lābiēnus summum montem³ occūpāvit. 7. Summus mons ā Lābiēno⁴ occūpātus est. 8. Nēgat summum montem ā Lābiēno occūpātum essē. 9. Milītes hortābīmur

ut summum montem occūpent. 10. Sī Lābiēnus summum montem occūpet, Caesar sit⁵ fēlicissīmus. 11. Iter pēr prōvinciam est fācīlius.⁶ 12. Ager Sēquānus ērat optīmus⁷ tōtīus Galliae. 13. Caesar īn Galliam ultēriōrem pēr Alpes contendit (*hastens*). 14. Cītēriōris prōvinciae extrēmum oppīdum. 15. Segūsiāni sunt extrā prōvinciam prīmi.

Write in Latin.

1. A very large number of horses. 2. A larger number of cavalymen. 3. To the upper part of the Rhone. 4. The soldiers will occupy the top of the mountain. 5. The top of the mountain will be occupied by the soldiers. 6. The route through our province is most practicable. 7. I think (that) the route through the Alps is by far the most practicable. 8. Let us occupy the top of the mountain.

Notes.

¹ In parsing adjectives hereafter give their comparison, if they can be compared.

² Notice the different positions of the Genitive; what is the difference in force? See LN. III., NOTE 3.

³ **summum montem**, the top of the mountain.

⁴ See LN. XXXI., NOTE 6.

⁵ **sit**, would be.

⁶ Name the adjectives which form their Superlatives like **fācilis**.

⁷ **optīmus**, sc. **āger**.



LESSON XLI.

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

86. Dative with Adjectives. A. & G. 234: A. & S. 222. 3: B. 245, RULE XXXIII.: B. & M. 860: G. 356: H. 391: C. 162, 1, 2.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Belgae sunt proximī Germānis, the Belgae are nearest TO THE GERMANS.*
2. *Castris Idōneūs lōcūs est, the place is suitable FOR A CAMP.*
3. *Deō similis est, he is like A GOD.*

VOCABULARY.

aetās, ātis, f.	age.
āmīcūs, ā, ūm,	friendly.
commūnis, ē,	common.
Idōneūs, ā, ūm,	fit, suitable.
īnīmīcūs, ā, ūm,	unfriendly, hostile.
pātriā, ae, f.	native land, fatherland.
pēriculōsūs, ā, ūm,	dangerous.
sīmilis, ē,	like, similar.
sōlūm, ī, n.	ground, soil.

Analyze and parse.

1. Aquītānī sunt proximī prōvinciae. 2. Aquītānī sunt prōpiōrēs prōvinciae quā Itāliae. 3. Gēnāvā est oppīdūm proximūm Helvētiōrūm fīnībūs. 4. Extrēmūm oppīdūm Allobrōgūm est proximūmquē Helvētiōrūm fīnībūs Gēnāvā. 5. Castris nōn Idōneūs omnis lōcūs est. 6. Nēgūt castris Idōneūm omnēm lōcūm essē. 7. Sī castris Idōneūs lōcūs sīt, milītēs laetentūr.¹ 8. Nōn ēgō sūm Idōneūs armīs. 9. Sī ēgō fuissēm Idōneūs armīs, laetātūs essēm. 10. Dumnōrix Helvētiis ērāt amīcūs. 11. Dux īnīmīciōr Dumnōrigī fuīt quā Caesārī. 12. Mātrī puellā est sīmilis. 13. Nōn omnis puēr est sīmilis pātrī. 14. Omnī aetātī mors est commūnis. 15. Pātriae sōlūm omnībūs cārūm est. 16. Pōpūlō Rōmānō pēriculōsūm est proeliūm. 17. Omnī urbī lēgēs sunt ūtīlēs. 18. Impērātōr suōs milītēs hortātūr ūt fortēs sint² et urbī Rōmae ūtīlēs.

Write in Latin.

1. He says (that) the Aquitani are nearest to the province.
 2. Ocelum was the furthestmost town of the hither province and nearest to the Alps. 3. If the place had been suitable for a camp, we should have rejoiced.³ 4. Let us urge the soldiers to be² useful to (their) fatherland. 5. The lieutenant was most friendly to the soldiers. 6. The daughter is more like (her) father than (her) mother. 7. I do⁴ not think (that) the battle will be dangerous to the city.

Notes.

¹ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 4. What kind of a sentence is this? (80)

² See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 3.

³ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 5.

⁴ See LN. X., NOTE 5.

LESSON XLII.

ADVERBS.

87. Definition. A. & G. 25, *f*: A. & S. 190, 2: B. 30: B. & M. 460: G. 15, IV., 1: H. 303: C. 98.

88. Derivation. A. & G. 148, *a, b*: A. & S. 192, II., 1, 2: B. 199, *b, c*: B. & M. 591; 592; 595: G. 90, 1-4: H. 304, I.-IV.: C. 99, 1, 2.

89. Classification. A. & G. 149, *a-e*: A. & S. 190, 3; 191, I.-III.: B. 175, *a-f*, REMARK: B. & M. 461, 1-6: H. 305, NOTE 2, 1)-4): C. 99, 3.

90. Comparison. A. & G. 92: A. & S. 194, 1, 2, 4: B. 174, *a-c*: B. & M. 462; 463: G. 91: H. 306: C. 52.

91. Syntax. A. & G. 207: A. & S. 277, I.: B. 327, RULE LXXIX.: B. & M. 996: G. 440, 2: H. 551: C. 255.

VOCABULARY.

ācritēr , adv.	<i>sharply, fiercely.</i>
audactēr , adv.	<i>boldly, courageously.</i>
cēlērītēr , adv.	<i>quickly, immediately.</i>
fācillē , adv.	<i>easily, readily.</i>
fortītēr , adv.	<i>bravely, valiantly.</i>
grāvītēr , adv.	<i>heavily, severely.</i>
libērē , adv.	<i>freely, unreservedly.</i>
quā , adv.	<i>where.</i>

Parse the adverbs and adjectives.

1. Belgae fortītēr¹ pugnāvērunt. 2. Sī milītēs fortiūs pūgnent, impērātōr laetētūr. 3. Rōmānī nōn ācriūs pugnābunt quām Gallī.² 4. Germānī Helvētiōs fācillē³ sūpērābunt. 5. Gallī ā Caesārē nōn fācillīmē sūpērātī sunt. 6. Nunciāt Gallōs ā Caesārē nōn fācillīmē sūpērātōs essē. 7. Caesār Dumnōrigēm grāvissīmē accūsāvīt. 8. Caesār cēlērītēr conciliū dīmittīt (*dismisses*). 9. Liscūs dīcīt libēriūs⁴ atquē⁵ audāciūs. 10. Quā⁶ mīnīmā altitūdo flūmīnīs ērāt. 11. Jumentōrūm ēt carrōrūm quām⁷ maxīmūm nūmērūm coēmērē⁸ (*to purchase*). 12. Hostēs quām fortissīmē pugnābant. 13. Helvētiī Rōmānīs⁹ quām āmicissīmī fuērunt. 14. Sōlūm patriae cīvī quām cārissīmūm est.

Notes.

¹ *Form for parsing an adverb.* — fortītēr is an adverb of manner (89); derived from the adjective fortis (88); compared fortītēr, fortiūs, fortissīmē (90); of the positive degree and modifies pugnāvērunt (91).

² What is the construction of Gallī?

³ A. & G. 148, d: A. & S. 192, 4, (b.): B. 174, d: B. & M. 596: G. 90, 4: H. 304, I., 3, 1): C. 99, 1, a.

⁴ libērē has no Superlative.

⁵ See LN. XXIII., NOTE 2.

⁶ As a rule only those adverbs are compared which are derived from adjectives.

⁷ quām modifying a Superlative *strengthens* it: e. g. quām maxīmūm, *as large as possible*; quām fortissīmē, *as bravely as possible*.

⁸ (..) is the mark of *Diaeresis*; when placed over the second of two vowels which regularly form a diphthong, it shows that they are to be *separated* in pronunciation: e. g. *coemere* has four syllables; *coemere* would have only three.

⁹ See 86.



LESSON XLIII.

VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE.

92. Learn the entire Active Voice of the Second Conjugation. A. & G. 130: A. & S. 157: B. 79; 80: B. & M. 288: G. 123; 124: H. 207: C. 75. See 27, 28, 37, 45, 49, 50 of this book.

VOCABULARY.

mōneō, ¹	ērē, uī, itūm,	<i>advise.</i>
hābeō,	ērē, uī, itūm,	<i>have.</i>
prōhibeō,	ērē, uī, itūm,	<i>restrain, keep from.</i>

¹ Most verbs of the Second Conjugation form their Perfect and Supine like *mōneō*. For the *principal parts* let *ērē, uī, itūm* take the place of final *eō*: e. g. *hābeō, hābērē, hābui, hābitūm*.

Conjugate and give a complete synopsis¹ of each verb; name its elements.

1. Mōnebātīs, mōnebītīs, mōnuistīs. 2. Sī mōneāmūs,² sī mōnērēmūs, sī mōnuissēmūs. 3. Mōnē, mōnētē, mōnentō. 4. Mōnens, mōnītūrūs. 5. Mōnērē, mōnuissē, mōnītūrūs essē. 6. Ut equōs hābeāmūs.² 7. Ut rex urbēs multās ēt³ magnās hābeāt. 8. Multā castrā hābēbīmūs. 9. Lēgātūs multōs milītēs hābuērīt.⁴ 10. Hābētō, hābētōtē.⁵ 11. Hābens, hābītūrūs. 12. Hābērē, hābuissē, hābītūrūs essē. 13. Sī Helvētiōs ītīnērē⁶ prōhibeant. 14. Sī Helvētiōs ītīnērē prōhibuissent. 15. Helvētiōs ītīnērē prōhibeāmūs.⁷ 16. Itīnērē Helvētiōs prōhibērē⁸ cōnantūr. 17. Itīnērē hostēs prōhibēbīmūs. 18. Milītēs ītīnērē hostēs prōhibērē cōnābuntūr. 19. Sī ītīnērē milītēs prōhibuissēmūs. 20. Legātī nostrōs vīrōs mōnuērunt.

Write in Latin.

1. You have, you were having, you will have had. 2. If you should have, if you had, if you had had. 3. Have ye, he shall have, they shall have. 4. To restrain, to have restrained, to be about to restrain. 5. If we should keep the soldiers from the town. 6. If we shall have kept the soldiers from the town. 7. Let us keep the enemy from the town. 8. We shall attempt to keep the enemy from the town.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XXXV., NOTE 1.² See LN. XXIX., EXAMPLES.³ See LN. VI., NOTE 5.⁴ Define the use of the Future Perfect Tense. (42)⁵ Define the use of the Imperative Mood. (47)⁶ *Itinērē* is an *Ablative of Separation*. A. & G. 243: A. & S. 251: B. 256, RULE XLI.: B. & M. 916: G. 388: H. 413; 414: C. 177.⁷ See LN. XXIX., EX. 7.⁸ See 69.

What are the Personal Endings of the Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, Active Voice? Of the Imperative? Of the Infinitives and Participles? How are the different Stems of a verb found? (28, 45, 50) What two uses has the Perfect Indicative? (43)



LESSON XLIV.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

93. *Accusative of Time*. A. & G. 256: A. & S. 236: B. 220, RULE XI.: B. & M. 950: G. 337: H. 379: C. 129, 1. This answers the question, *How long?*

VOCABULARY.

dēleō, ēre, ēvī,	ētūm,	destroy.
dōceō, ēre, uī,	doctūm,	teach.
jūbeō, ēre, jussī,	jussūm,	command, order.
māneō, ēre, mansī,	mansūm,	stay, remain.

mōveĉ, ěrě, mōvĭ, mōtŭm,	<i>move, remove.</i>
obtĭneĉ, ěrě, uĭ, obtentŭm,	<i>hold, obtain.</i>
possessiĉ, ōnĭa, f.	<i>possession.</i>
vĭcŭs, ĭ, m.	<i>village.</i>

Analyze and parse.

1. Germāni multos vĭcos dĕlēvērant. 2. Aliud¹ ŷter hăbēbant nullum. 3. Quă² plŭrĭmas cĭvĭtătes hăbēbant. 4. Allobrĕges trans Rhŏdănum vĭcos possessiŏnesquĕ³ hăbēbant. 5. Puĕros⁴ littĕras⁴ dŏceămus. 6. Dicĭt mătrem⁵ filiās littĕras dŏcĕre. 7. In Galliă ultĕriŏre multos annos⁶ mănĕbĭmus. 8. Caesar sĕnătŏrem hortătur ŷt⁷ ĩn castris multos menses maneat.⁷ 9. Regnum ĩn Sĕquănis multos annos obtĭnuĕrat. 10. Divĭco lĕgătĭŏnis lŏcum princĭpem obtĭnĕbat. 11. Sĭ ĩmpĕrătŏr castra mŏveat, mĭlĭtĕs fortius⁸ pugnent. 12. Castra⁹ movĕre¹⁰ cĕlĕrius nŏn pŏtuĕrunt.¹¹ 13. Itĭnĕrĕ¹² Helvĕtĭos prŏhĭbĕre nŏn pŏtĕrunt.¹¹ 14. Helvĕtĭi suis fĭnĭbus Germănos prŏhĭbēbant. 15. Proxĭmum¹³ ŷter ĩn ultĕriŏrem Galliam pĕr Alpes est. 16. Sĕd ĩn summo jŭgo duas (*two*) lĕgiŏnes,¹⁴ quas (*which*) ĩn Galliă cĭtĕriŏre proxĭme conscripserat (*he had enlisted*), ĕt omnia auxĭlia¹⁴ collŏcărĭ¹⁵ jussit.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Which adjectives have their Genitive in *ŭs* and Dative in *ĭ*? (24)

² See LN. XLII., NOTE 7.

³ See LN. XXIII., VY., NOTE.

⁴ See 71.

⁵ See 53.

⁶ See 93.

⁷ How is *ut* — *măneat* to be translated? See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

⁸ From what adjective is *fortiter* derived?

⁹ What does *castra* signify in the Singular?

¹⁰ See 69.

¹¹ How do *pŏtuĕrunt* and *pŏtĕrunt* differ from each other?

¹² See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

¹³ *proxĭmum*, *shortest*.

¹⁴ *lĕgiŏnes* and *auxĭlia* are subjects of *collŏcărĭ*. (53)

¹⁵ *collŏcărĭ* (*to be stationed*) with its subjects is object of *jussit*. (52)

LESSON XLV.

VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION: PASSIVE VOICE.

94. Learn the entire Passive Voice of the Second Conjugation.
A. & G. 130: A. & S. 157: B. 79; 80: B. & M. 259: G. 125;
126: H. 208: C. 75.

See also 73, a, of this book.

VOCABULARY.

contīneō, ēre, uī, contentūm,	<i>hem in, bound.</i>
dītlo, ōnīs, f.	<i>dominion, power.</i>
ōceānūs, ī, m.	<i>ocean.</i>
rāpīnā, ae, f.	<i>plundering.</i>
servītus, ūtīs, f.	<i>slavery.</i>
tēneō, ēre, uī, tentūm,	<i>hold, keep.</i>
undīquē, adv.	<i>on all sides.</i>

Give a complete synopsis of each verb and parse.

1. Una pars contīnētur¹ Gārumnā² flūmīne,³ Oceāno, finībus Belgārum. 2. Undīquē lōci nātūrā⁴ Helvētīi contīnentur. 3. Summus mons⁵ ā Tīto Lābiēno tēnēbātur. 4. Nunciat summum montem ā hostībūs tentum essē. 5. Sī summus mons ā hostībūs teneātur, nōstri milītēs quām acerrīme⁶ pugnent. 6. Aedui īn servītūte atquē īn dītīōne Germānōrum tenti sunt. 7. Caesar mēmōriā tēnēbat. 8. Hostis ā Caesāre rāpīnis⁷ prōhībēbātur. 9. Summus mons ā hostībūs tēnēri nōn pōtest.⁸ 10. Galli tēnēri īn servītūte nōn pōterant.⁸ 11. Obsīdes multos annos īn servītūte tēnēbantur. 12. Sī multos annos īn servītūte tenti essēmus, nōn fēlices fuissēmus.

Write in Latin.

1. The top⁵ of the mountain will be held by Caesar. 2. The top of the mountain could⁸ not be held by Caesar. 3. He says (that) the top of the mountain was held by the Germans.

4. If Cassius should keep in memory. 5. The Germans are hemmed in on all sides by the character of their country. 6. The Germans will be kept from plundering by the Romans. 7. They were held in slavery many years.⁹

Notes and Questions.

¹ Define the Passive Voice ? (72) What are the Personal Endings of the Passive Voice ? Name the three Stems of *continēo*. On which Stem are the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive formed ?

² See 54.

³ See 25.

⁴ *lōci nātūrā*, by the character of their country.

⁵ *summus mons*, the top of the mountain ; lit., the highest mountain.

⁶ From *aoriter* ; from what adjective is *aoriter* derived ?

⁷ *rāpinis* ; translate by the Singular ; see LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

⁸ When *possum* governs a Passive Infinitive render it by *can*, if in the Present Tense ; by *could*, if in a Past Tense ; e. g. *tēnēri pōtēst*, can be held ; *tēnēri pōtērat*, could be held.

⁹ See 93.



LESSON XLVI.

DEPONENT VERBS : SECOND CONJUGATION.

95. Learn the entire Deponent Verb of the Second Conjugation.

A. & G. 135 : A. & S. 161 : B. 46 ; 55 ; 93 : B. & M. 304 ; 308 : G. 211 ; 143 ; 144 : H. 231, 1-3 ; NOTE under 232 : C. p. 99.

VOCABULARY.

intueor, *ērī*, *intuitūs sūm*,¹ look at.

nē, adv.

not, used with the Subjunctive and Imperative.

nē, conj.

that not ; after verbs of fearing, that ; used with the Subjunctive.

polliceor, *ērī*, *pollicitūs sūm*, promise.

vēreor, *ērī*, *vēritūs sūm*, fear.

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Aedui frumentum pollicentur.² 2. Aedui frumentum publice polliciti erant. 3. Vereor ne Aedui Romanis³ frumentum polliceantur.⁴ 4. Ne⁵ frumentum polliceamur.⁶ 5. Si Aedui frumentum maturum polliciti essent, Caesar felix fuisset. 6. Romani non hostem verentur sed angustias itineris. 7. Ne Divitiaci animum offenderet (*he should offend*) vereretur. 8. Nunciat⁷ Sequanos terram intueri. 9. Negat⁸ Romanos hostem veritos esse. 10. Solem intueri non possumus. 11. Ne solem intueamur. 12. Vereremur ne hostes agros nostros popularentur. 13. Veremur ne hostes agros nostros populentur. 14. Veremini ne hostes agros vestros populentur. 15. Romanis frumentum non polliciti sumus. 16. Romani Helvetiis obsides non pollicebuntur.

Write in Latin.

1. We were exhorting and promising. 2. They have promised ripe corn. 3. He says that they⁹ have promised ripe corn. 4. He fears that the Romans will promise⁴ corn to our enemies.³ 5. Let us not promise corn to the Gauls. 6. Let us not look at the men. 7. Let us not fear the difficulties of the route. 8. I fear that the route will be⁴ dangerous.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XXXV., VY., 1.² Define a Deponent Verb. (77)

What Participles do Deponent Verbs have? What Infinitives?

³ See 39.⁴ When the *Present Subjunctive* depends upon a *verb of fearing* which is in the Present Tense, render it by the *Future Indicative*: ne Aedui polliceantur, *that the Aedui will promise*.⁶ ne is here an adverb.⁸ See LN. XXXIII., NOTE 3.⁶ See LN. XXIX., EXAMPLE 7.⁹ they, eos.⁷ What is the object of nunciat?

LESSON XLVII.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

96. A. & G. 68; 69: A. & S. 87; 88: B. 142; 143, REM. 2: B. & M. 137: G. 67; 68: H. 116, 1, 2; 118, (I): C. 34.

97. Declension of dōmūs. A. & G. 70, f: A. & S. 89: B. 143, REM. 8: B. & M. 144: G. 67, 2: H. 119: C. 34, 1.

VOCABULARY.

adventūs, ūs, m.	<i>arrival, approach.</i>
commōveo, ērē, commōvi, commōtum,	<i>move, disturb.</i>
conspectūs, ūs, m.	<i>sight; view.</i>
cornū, ūs, n.	<i>horn; of an army, wing.</i>
dextēr, dextrā, dextrūm,	<i>right.</i>
dōmūs, ūs, f.	<i>house; dōmi, at home.</i>
ēquītātūs, ūs, m.	<i>cavalry.</i>
exercītūs, ūs, m.	<i>army.</i>
impētūs, ūs, m.	<i>attack.</i>
paenē, adv.	<i>almost.</i>
sempēr, adv.	<i>always.</i>
sustīneō, ērē, uī, sustentūm,	<i>sustain, withstand.</i>

Parse the nouns and verbs.

1. Dē Caesāris adventū.¹ 2. Helvētii Caesārīs adventū² commōti sunt. 3. In conspectū hostium. 4. Omnium³ ex conspectū. 5. Paenē in conspectū exercītūs nostri⁴ agri vastantur. 6. Cū ēquītātū Helvētiōrum. 7. Magnum nūmērū ēquītātūs sempēr hābēbat. 8. Equītātūs sustinēbat hostium impētū. 9. Lābiēnus exercītuī⁵ Rōmāno prae-fuit. 10. Hostes impētūs milītum sustīnere nōn pōtuerunt. 11. Equītātū omnem praemittit (*he sends forward*) qui⁶ impētū hostium sustīneat.⁶ 12. Nē hostium adventū commōveāmur. 13. A dextro cornū; ad dextrum cornū. 14. Caesar dōmi fuit. 15. Sēquāni itinērē⁷ exercītum nostrum prōhibere cōnantur.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 16. How many declensions are there in Latin, and how distinguished from one another? (8) What is the *Stem-Ending* of each? What are the *Case-Endings* of the Fourth Declension?

² See 79.

³ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 10.

⁴ *nostri* modifies *exercitūs*.

⁵ See 67.

⁶ *qui* — *sustineat*, to *withstand*.

⁷ See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

LESSON XLVIII.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

98. A. & G. NOTE ; 72 ; 73 ; 74, *d* : A. & S. 90, 1, REMARK 1 : B. 144, NOTE ; 145, REM. 1, 2 : B. & M. *all of* 146 ; 147 : G. 69, REMARKS 1, 2 ; 70 : H. 120, 1, 2 ; 122 ; 123 : C. 35.

VOCABULARY.

<i>commeātūs, ūs</i> , m.	<i>supplies, provisions.</i>
<i>compārō, ārē, āvī, ātūm</i> ,	<i>prepare.</i>
<i>diēs, diēi</i> , m.	<i>day.</i>
<i>fidēs, fidēi</i> , f.	<i>faith, pledge, promise.</i>
<i>perniciēs, perniciēi</i> , f.	<i>ruin, destruction.</i>
<i>prōfectio, ōnis</i> , f.	<i>departure.</i>
<i>rēs, rēi</i> , f.	<i>thing, affair.</i>
<i>spēs, spēi</i> , f.	<i>hope, expectation.</i>

Analyze and parse.

1. Cūm perniciē¹ exercitūs. 2. Ad suam perniciēm.
 3. Uno diē. 4. Diem dīcunt (*they appoint*). 5. Sīnē spē.
 6. In mēliōrem² spēm. 7. Magnam īn spēm. 8. Magnas
 spēs habēmus. 9. Rēs Helvētiis³ enūciāta est. 10. Pūtat
 rēs Helvētiis enūciātas essē. 11. Omnes rēs ād prōfec-
 tiōnem compārātae sunt. 12. Caesar paucos diēs⁴ ād⁵ Vē-
 sōntiōnem commeātūs causā⁶ mōrātur. 13. Caesar Gallis

fīdēm dābit. 14. Vēreor nē Caesar Helvētiis fīdēm det.⁷
 15. Sī Caesar Germānis fīdēm det, Rōmānī nōn laetentur.
 16. Caesar Divitiāco⁸ maxīmam fīdēm hābēbat. 17. Germānis parvam hābet fīdēm. 18. Caesāri fīdēm hābeāmus.⁹

Write in Latin.

1. The affair will be reported to the Romans. 2. He says (that) the affair has been reported to the Romans. 3. We had great expectations. 4. We shall prepare all things for the departure. 5. With the ruin of many cities. 6. We shall delay many days near⁵ Rome for the sake of provisions. 7. We fear that the leader will give⁷ a pledge to the Romans. 8. We have the greatest confidence in⁸ the Helvetii. 9. They have very little¹⁰ confidence in the Germans.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What is the Stem of *perniciōs*, *diēs*, *spēs*, *fīdēs*? When is the final Stem-Vowel short? What are the Case-Endings of the Fifth Declension? Which nouns are complete in the Plural?

² See 84.

³ See 39.

⁴ See 93.

⁵ See LN. XXXV., NOTE 4.

⁶ See General Vocabulary under *causā*.

⁷ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

⁸ *Divitiāco* — *fīdem hābēbat*, *had* — confidence IN *Divitiacus*; lit., *had confidence TO Divitiacus*. See 39.

⁹ See LN. XXIX., EX. 7.

¹⁰ See LN. XXXIX., NOTE 2.



LESSON XLIX.

VERBS: THIRD CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE.

99. Learn the entire Active Voice of the Third Conjugation.
 A. & G. 131: A. & S. 158: B. 87; 88: B. & M. 202: G. 131;
 132: H. 209; 241–248: C. 76.

a. The Imperative and Present Indicative have a connecting vowel between the Stem and Personal Ending; this connecting vowel is **u** before **n**, elsewhere **i**. The First Person Singular Present Indicative has the termination **ō**; the Second Person Singular Present Imperative, the termination **ē**.

b. The Imperfect Indicative has a connecting vowel (**ē**) between the Stem and Tense-Sign; the Present Participle and Present Infinitive, a connecting vowel (**e**) between the Stem and Ending.

c. The Future Indicative has a connecting vowel between the Stem and Personal Ending; this is **a** in the First Singular, elsewhere **e**.

VOCABULARY.

contendō ,	ērē ,	contendī ,	contentūm ,	<i>hasten, march rapidly.</i>
dimitto ,	ērē ,	dīmisi ,	dīmissūm ,	<i>dismiss.</i>
gēro ,	ērē ,	gessi ,	gestūm ,	<i>carry, carry on.</i>
mittō ,	ērē ,	misi ,	missūm ,	<i>send.</i>
tollō ,	ērē ,	sustuli ,	sublatūm ,	<i>lift, take away.</i>

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb; name its elements; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Caesar in Italiam magnis itineribus¹ contendit. 2. Caesar ad hostes contendit equitatumque omnem mittit.² 3. Caesarem hortemur ut ad hostes contendat. 4. Helvetii legatos ad Caesarem mittunt. 5. Helvetii exercitum Romanum sub jugum³ miserunt. 6. Nunciat Helvetios exercitum Romanum sub jugum misisse. 7. Imperator celeriter concilium dimittit. 8. Consul spem fugae tollibat. 9. Tollē, consul, spem fugae. 10. Belgae cum Germanis continentem bellum gesserunt. 11. Si omnes res ad perfectionem comparatae sint, in Galliam ulteriorem contendamus. 12. Veremur ut⁴ rex cum hostibus bellum gerat.⁵

Write in Latin.

1. Let us hasten into farther Gaul. 2. Let us urge the lieutenant to hasten into hither Gaul. 3. The Romans carried on war with the Gauls many years.⁶ 4. The Sequani had sent our army under the yoke. 5. The king will have taken

away the hope of flight. 6. The king had taken away the hope of flight. 7. He thinks that the king has taken away the hope of flight.

Notes and Questions.

¹ *magnis itinēribus*, by long marches. See 54.

² Name the Stems of *mittō*. What are the Future Endings of the Third Conjugation? Of the First and Second? What is the sign of the Imperfect Indicative?

³ When was an army "sent under a yoke," and why? See General Vocabulary under *jūgum*.

⁴ *ut* after verbs of *fearing* is to be rendered *that not*.

⁵ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

⁶ What question does "many years" answer? (93)



LESSON L.

VERBS : PASSIVE VOICE : THIRD CONJUGATION.

100. Learn the entire Passive Voice of the Third Conjugation. A. & G. 131 : A. & S. 158 : B. 87 ; 88 : B. & M. 293 : G. 133 ; 134 : H. 210 : C. 76.

See also 73, a, of this book, observing that in the Third Conjugation the exception is the Second Person Singular of the *Present* Indicative instead of the Future.

VOCABULARY.

<i>cingō</i> ,	<i>ērē</i> ,	<i>cinxī</i> ,	<i>cinctūm</i> ,	<i>surround, encircle.</i>
<i>dēligō</i> ,	<i>ērē</i> ,	<i>dēlēgī</i> ,	<i>dēlectūm</i> ,	<i>select, choose.</i>
<i>dīcō</i> ,	<i>ērē</i> ,	<i>dixī</i> ,	<i>dictūm</i> ,	<i>say, tell.</i>
<i>dūcō</i> ,	<i>ērē</i> ,	<i>duxī</i> ,	<i>ductūm</i> ,	<i>lead, draw.</i>
<i>vincō</i> ,	<i>ērē</i> ,	<i>vīcī</i> ,	<i>victūm</i> ,	<i>conquer.</i>

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. *Exercitus Rōmānus āb Helvētiis sūb jūgum missus est.*¹
2. *Orgētōrix dēlēgītūr.*¹
3. *Cassius lēgātus*² *dēlēgētūr.*
4. *Vix singūli carri dūcēbantūr.*
5. *Vix singūli carri pēr angustias*

ducti erant. 6. Paenē tōtum oppīdum flūmīne³ cingītūr. 7. Nē āb hostīb³ vincām³ur. 8. Sī āb hostīb³ victi es-sēmus, victoriā⁴ glōriātī essent.⁵ 9. Sī Caesar exercitui⁶ praesit, nōn vincāmīnī. 10. Nōn impērātor² dēligēris. 11. Carri pēr angustias dūcī nōn possunt.⁷ 12. Germāni ā Rōmānis vinci nōn pōtērant.⁷ 13. Urbs cingīt³ur; urbs cingētur. 14. Castra vallo¹⁰ cincta sunt. 15. Sī castra vallo cingantur, nōn vincāmus. 16. Sī Caesar impērātor dēligāt³ur, omnes laententur.

Write in Latin.

1. The Helvetii had been sent under a yoke. 2. Caesar said (that) the Gauls had been sent under a yoke. 3. The wagons will be drawn with difficulty one by one. 4. Almost the entire town was surrounded by a river.³ 5. We shall not be conquered by the enemy.³ 6. We fear that you will be conquered⁸ by the Germans. 7. As brave soldiers as possible⁹ will be selected. 8. The best (men) have been selected. 9. We fear that our soldiers will be sent under a yoke. 10. You fear that¹¹ Titus will not¹¹ send the enemy under a yoke. 11. We fear that Caesar will not select the bravest soldiers. 12. We shall select as many soldiers as possible. 13. If the general should select the bravest men, all would rejoice. 14. Let us select as brave soldiers as possible.

Notes and Questions.

1 What are the Personal Endings of the Passive Voice ? (72) What are the Future Endings of the Third Conjugation, Passive Voice ? Of the First and Second Conjugations, Passive Voice ? Which verbs have a Passive Voice ? Ans. *Transitive Verbs*, i. e. verbs which in the Active Voice take a direct object. (34)

² See 64.

⁴ See 79 and Ex. 2.

⁶ See 67.

⁸ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

¹⁰ See 54.

³ See LN. XXXI., NOTE 6.

⁵ See LN. XXXVI., EX. 5.

⁷ See LN. XLV., NOTE 8.

⁹ See LN. XLII., NOTE 7.

¹¹ See LN. XLIX., NOTE 4.

LESSON LI.

VERBS : FOURTH CONJUGATION.

101. Learn the entire conjugation of *audiō*, Active and Passive.
 A. & G. 132 : A. & S. 160 : B. 83 ; 84 : B. & M. 300 ; 301 : G.
 135 - 138 : H. 211 ; 212 : C. 78.

a. The Third Person Plural of the Present Indicative and Future Imperative has the connecting vowel *u* : e. g. *audi-u-nt*, *audi-u-nto* ; see also *eo*, *b* and *c*.

VOCABULARY

<i>audiō</i> ,	<i>irē</i> ,	<i>ivī</i> ,	<i>itūm</i> ,	<i>hear.</i>
<i>con-vēniō</i> ,	<i>irē</i> ,	<i>vēnī</i> ,	<i>ventūm</i> ,	<i>come together, assemble.</i>
<i>mūniō</i> ,	<i>irē</i> ,	<i>ivī</i> ,	<i>itūm</i> ,	<i>fortify.</i>
<i>per-vēniō</i> ,	<i>irē</i> ,	<i>vēnī</i> ,	<i>ventūm</i> ,	<i>come to, arrive.</i>
<i>vēniō</i> ,	<i>irē</i> ,	<i>vēnī</i> ,	<i>ventūm</i> ,	<i>come.</i>

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. *Puēri multas res audiunt.* 2. *Multae res ā puēris audiuntūr.* 3. *Milītes impērātōrem audient.* 4. *Impērātōr ā milītibus audiētūr.* 5. *Belgae tōtum oppīdum mūnīvērunt.*¹ 6. *Tōtum oppīdum ā Belgis mūnītūm est.* 7. *Sī castra ā milītibus mūnītā essent, hostes nōn vīcissent.* 8. *Mūniāmūs urbem Rōmam.* 9. *Caesar īn Galliam cītēriōrem vēnīt.*² 10. *Vēnī, vīdī,*³ *vīcī.*³ 11. *Ad rīpam Rhōdāni omnes convēniunt.* 12. *Milītes hortātūr ūt ād rīpam Rhōdāni convēniant.* 13. *In fīnes Gallōrum pervēnērunt, ūbi (where) proptēr vulnēra milītum paucos dies*⁴ *mōrātī sunt.* 14. *Helvētīi īn Aeduōrum fīnes pervēnērant*⁵ *ēt agros pōpūlābantūr.*⁶

Write in Latin.

1. The soldiers had heard many things. 2. Many things are heard by the soldiers. 3. The ambassador will be heard.

4. The Romans **came** into farther Gaul. 5. They fortified Geneva, a **walled** town. 6. Let us fortify many towns. 7. We **came**, we saw, we conquered. 8. The bravest soldiers have assembled on the bank of the Rhine.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ What other Ending has the Perfect Indicative Active, Third Plural ?
- ² How does **vēnit** differ from **vēnit** in meaning ?
- ³ **vidi** from **videō** ; **vici** from **vincō**.
- ⁴ See 93.
- ⁵ How does the Pluperfect Indicative represent the action ? (42)
- ⁶ How does the Imperfect Indicative represent the action ? (36)
- ⁷ How many conjugations are there, and how distinguished from one another ?



LESSON LII.

THIRD CONJUGATION : VERBS IN IO.

102. Learn the entire conjugation, Active and Passive, of **cāpiō**.
A. & G. 131, page 83 : A. & S. 159 : B. 92 : B. & M. 294-297 :
G. 139 ; 140 : H. 217-219 : C. 77.

VOCABULARY.

cāpiō ,	capērē ,	cēpī ,	captūm ,	<i>take, capture.</i>
cūpiō ,	cūpērē ,	cūpīvī ,	cūpitūm ,	<i>desire.</i>
fāciō ,	fācērē ,	fēcī ,	factūm ,	<i>make, do ; Itēr fācērē, to march.</i>
fōdiō ,	fōdērē ,	fōdī ,	fossūm ,	<i>dig.</i>
fūgiō ,	fūgērē ,	fūgī ,	fūgitūm ,	<i>flee.</i>
jāciō ,	jācērē ,	jēcī ,	jactūm ,	<i>throw, hurl.</i>
rāpiō ,	rāpērē ,	rāpuī ,	raptūm ,	<i>seize, plunder.</i>

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Rōmānī multa oppīda cēpērunt. 2. Multa oppīda ā Rōmānīs captā sunt. 3. Helvētīī magnas possessiōnes cūpient.

4. Magnae possessionēs āb Helvētiis cūpientūr. 5. Nostri milītes tēla īn hostes jāciēbant.¹ 6. Germāni castra Rōmānōrum rāpuērunt. 7. Germāni magnam fossam fōdērant. 8. Fossas multas ēt magnas fōdērīmūs. 9. Fūgītē,² milītes,³ īn urbem. 10. Dux nūciat hostes⁴ oppīdum captūrōs⁵ essē. 11. Lēgātus dixit oppīdum ā milītibus captūm essē.⁶ 12. Una pars īnītium ā flūmīne Rhōdāno cāpīt. 13. Lēgātus vērētūr nē lōcus ex internēcione exercītūs nōmen cāpiāt.⁷ 14. Helvētii pēr prōvinciam nōstram īter faciēbant. 15. Helvētii pēr agrum Sēquānōrum īter īn Aeduōrum fines faciēnt. 16. Iter faciāmūs īn fines Germānōrum. 17. Lēgātus milītes hortābātūr quō īter cēlērīus⁸ faciērent.⁸ 18. Milītes īter cēlērīus faciēre nōn possunt.

Notes.

¹ Change sentences 5, 6, 7 into the Passive form ; compare sentences 3 and 4.

² See 47.

³ See LN. V., NOTE 5.

⁴ See 53.

⁵ Why *captūrōs* and not *captūrūs* ?

⁶ *captūm esse*, *had been taken*.

⁷ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

⁸ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

⁹ *cēlērīus*, an *adjective*, modifying *īter*.



LESSON LIII.

DEPONENT VERBS: THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.

103. Learn the entire Third and Fourth Conjugations of Dependent Verbs. A. & G. 135 : A. & S. 161 ; 158–160 : B. 93 : B. & M. 309 ; 310 : G. 145–148 : H. 231, 1–3 ; NOTE under 232 : C. p. 100.

104. Ablative with certain Deponents. A. & G. 249 : A. & S. 245 : B. 258, a : B. & M. 880 : G. 405 : H. 421, I. : C. 167.

VOCABULARY.

mētor,	mētīrī,	mensūs	sūm,	measure, deal out.
nītor,	nītī,	nīsūs or nixūs	sūm,	strive, endeavor.
ōrior,	ōrīrī,	ortūs	sūm,	rise, begin.
pōtior,	pōtīrī,	pōtītūs	sūm,	get possession of, obtain.
prōficiscor,	prōficiscī,	prōfectūs	sūm,	set out, depart.
sēquor,	sēquī,	sēcūtūs	sūm,	follow.
ūtor,	ūtī.	ūsūs	sūm,	use, make use of.

Conjugate ; name the Stems ;¹ give synopses ; parse.

1. Caesar hostes sēquītūr. 2. Caesar paucos dies³ mō-rātūs² hostes sēcūtūs est. 3. Liscus cūm lēgionībūs ē castris prōfectūs est. 4. Caesar mātūrat āb urbe prōficiscī. 5. Belgae āb extrēmīs Galliae fīnībūs⁴ ōriuntur. 6. Milītes frūmento nōn ūtentūr. 7. Frūmento ūtī⁵ hōmīnes nōn pōtērant. 8. Pāce ūtī nōn possūmus. 9. Impēdimentis castrisquē nostri⁶ pōtītī sunt. 10. Nītēbantūr ūt impērio pōtīrentūr. 11. Nītentūr ūt⁷ tōtīus Galliae impērio pōtiantūr.⁷ 12. Galli nītuntūr ūt impēdimentis pōtiantūr. 13. Dux vīrīs⁸ frūmentum mētītūr. 14. Liscus milītībūs frūmentum nōn mensus erat. 15. Nītāmūr ūt tōtīus Itāliae impērio pōtīāmūr.

Write in Latin.

1. Liscus will follow the enemy. 2. Our soldiers followed the Gauls. 3. The Gauls were following our army. 4. When I shall have set out from the city. 5. We shall make use of the corn. 6. The lieutenant is striving to get possession of⁷ the camp. 7. Let us strive to get possession of⁷ the baggage. 8. They attempt to get possession of⁵ the camp. 9. The Gauls were striving to get possession of the entire town.

Notes and Questions.

¹ *The Present Stem* of Deponent Verbs is found in the Present Infinitive by dropping the Ending *ri* in the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations, and the Ending *i* in the Third (cf. 28): e. g. HORTĀRī, VERĒRī,

pōtīrī, and **ūtī** are Present Infinitives ; **HORTA**, **VĒRE**, **POTI**, and **ŪT** their Present Stems.

The *Supine Stem* of Deponent Verbs is found in the Perfect Participle by dropping the ending **ūs** (cf. 50) : e. g. **HORTĀTūs**, **VĒRĪTūs**, **PŪTĪTūs**, and **ŪSūs** are Perfect Participles ; **HORTĀT**, **VĒRĪT**, **PŪTĪT**, and **ŪS** their Supine Stems.

² **mōrātūs**, *having delayed*.

³ **dies**, why in the Accusative ?

⁴ **finībūs**, *limits*.

⁵ See 69.

⁶ **nostri**, *our men*.

⁷ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

⁸ See 39.

Which Stem is wanting in Deponent Verbs ? What is a Deponent Verb ? What is the derivation and meaning of *deponent* ? See under **dēpōno**, General Vocabulary.



LESSON LIV.

GENERAL EXERCISE : PLACE.

105. Place to which. A. & G. 258, b : A. & S. 237, REM. 4 : B. 221, RULE XII. : B. & M. 938 : G. 410 : H. 380, I., II., 2, 1) : C. 130.

106. Place at or in which. A. & G. 258, c, d : A. & S. 221, REM. 3 ; 254 : B. 249, RULE XXXVII. : B. & M. 932 ; 933 : G. 412, REM. 1 : H. 425, I., II. ; 426, 2 : C. 148, 1, 2.

107. Place from which. A. & G. 258, a : A. & S. 255, REMARK 1 : B. 254, RULE XXXIX. : B. & M. 941 ; 943 : G. 411 : H. 412, I., II., 1 : C. 182.

a. **105** answers the question *Whither ?* or *To what place ?* **106**, *Where ?* or *In what place ?* **107**, *Whence ?* or *From what place ?*

EXAMPLES.

- Caesar Gēnāvam (105) contendit**, *Caesar hastened to GENEVA.*
- Liscus Aquilēiae (106) fuit**, *Liscus was IN AQUILEIA.*
- Cassius Rōmā (107) vēnit**, *Cassius came FROM ROME.*
- Divitiācus plūrimūm dōmī pōtērat**, *Divitiacus was very powerful AT HOME.*

VOCABULARY.

dŏmŭs, ūs, f.	<i>house, home : dŏmī, at home ; dŏmŭm, home, homeward ; dŏmō, from home.</i>
nīhīl (an indecl. neuter noun),	<i>nothing.</i>
Noviodŭnŭm, ī, n.	<i>Noviodunum.</i>
plŭrīmŭs, ō, ūm,	<i>most : plŭrīmŭm possē, to be very powerful.</i>
prae-mittŏ, ěrĕ, mīsī, missŭm,	<i>send forward.</i>
rĕ-vertor, vertī, versŭs sŭm,	<i>return.</i>
Suĕvī, ōrŭm, m.	<i>the Suevi.</i>
trā-dŭcŏ, dŭcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm,	<i>lead across.</i>

Analyze¹ and parse.

1. Consŭles Rŏmae plŭrīmos¹ annos² fuērunt. 2. Rŏmā vĕnērunt lĕgātī Gĕnāvam. 3. Divitiācus plŭrīmum³ dŏmī⁴ atquĕ īn rĕlīquā Galliā pŏtĕrat.³ 4. Impĕrātor omnem ĕquī-tātum Noviodŭnum praemisit. 5. Dŏmŭm mittam pueros mālos. 6. Suĕvī ād rīpas Rhĕnī vĕnĕrant ĕt dŏmum rĕvertĕ-bantŭr. 7. Nitĕmur ūt Norĕiam rĕvertāmŭr. 8. Sī Rŏmā prŏfīciscāmŭr,⁵ nŏn dŏmŭm rĕvertāmŭr. 9. Vĕrĕmŭr ūt⁶ nostri āmīci Rŏmae multos dies māneant.⁶ 10. Helvĕtii jām pĕr angustias ĕt fīnes Sĕquānŏrum suas cōpias trādūxĕrant ĕt īn Aeduŏrum fīnes pĕrvĕnĕrant.

Write in Latin.

1. We shall be at home very many¹ days.² 2. The friends will come home. 3. They came from Noviodunum to Rome. 4. The consul sent forward all the troops to Geneva. 5. He fears that we shall not⁶ return⁶ home. 6. Let⁷ us return home. 7. They will attempt to return to Geneva. 8. He was not able to return home. 9. If the soldiers had marched more quickly⁸ they would have come to the banks of the Rhone.

Notes.

- ¹ See LN. XXXIX., NOTE 2. ² See 93.
³ See EX. 4. ⁴ How is *dōmūs* declined? (97)
⁵ How is the Present Subjunctive with *si* translated? (LN. XXIX., Ex. 1.)
⁶ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4 and LN. XLIX., NOTE 4.
⁷ See LN. XXIX., EX. 7.
⁸ See LN. LII., NOTE 9 and LN. XXXVI., EX. 5.



LESSON LV.

NUMERALS. — EXTENT IN SPACE.

108. Learn the *Cardinals* and *Ordinals*, the declension of *ūnūs*, *duō*, *trēs*, and *millē*. A. & G. 94, *a-e*: A. & S. 117, I.; 118, I, 2, 6; 119: B. 167; 168, REM. 1-5: B. & M. 201-204; 206; 207: G. 92-94; 308: H. 171; 172; 174-179: C. 54; 55, I, 3.

109. *Extent in Space.* A. & G. 257: A. & S. 236: B. 220, RULE XI.: B. & M. 958: G. 335; 336: H. 379: C. 129, I. This answers such questions as *How far?* *How deep?* *How high?* *How wide?* *How long?*

EXAMPLES.

1. *Castră āb urbē mīlīā passuūm octō ābsunt*, the camp is EIGHT MILES distant from the city.
2. *Flūmēn pēdēs vīgintī altūm est*, the river is TWENTY FEET deep.
3. *Mons pēdēs nongentōs altūs est*, the mountain is NINE HUNDRED FEET high.

VOCABULARY.

<i>altēr, altērā, altērūm,</i>	<i>one of two, the other.</i>
<i>lātūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>wide.</i>
<i>longūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>long.</i>
<i>passūs, ūs, m.</i>	<i>step, pace; millē passūs, a mile; lit., a thousand paces.</i>

pēs, pēdis, m.	<i>foot.</i>
pōnō, pōnērē, pōsul, pōsītūm,	<i>place, put; castrā pōnērē, to pitch a camp.</i>
vīgiliā, ae, f.	<i>watch; dē primā vīgiliā, in the first watch.</i>

N. B. No numerals will be given in the Vocabularies ; they must be learned from the grammar.

Translate and parse.

1. Flūmen est pēdes quadrāgintā trēs lātum.¹ 2. Mons dēcēm miliā² trēcentos pēdes altus est. 3. Fossa pēdes trēcentos longa est, sex pēdes alta. 4. Fossa pēdes quindēcīm lāta est. 5. Milītes duas fossas quindēcīm pēdes lātas fodērunt. 6. Caesar dōmum³ tertiam⁴ lēgiōnem mīsīt. 7. Dē tertiā vīgiliā⁵ centūm ēt trīgintā quinquē milītes praemittit. 8. Miliā passuum⁶ triā āb urbe castra pōsuīt. 9. Oppīda ād⁷ quadrāgintā ēt vīcos ād quadringentōs incendunt. 10. Erant ītīnēra duō; ūnum pēr Sēquānos; altērūm pēr prōvinciam nostram. 11. Summa⁸ ērat cāpītum Helvētiōrum⁹ miliā dūcentā ēt sexāgintā triā. 12. Circīter miliā hōmīnum centūm ēt trīgintā sūperfuērunt.

Write in Latin.

1. The river is sixteen feet deep. 2. The river is two hundred feet wide. 3. The mountain is eight thousand feet high. 4. The river is ninety-four miles long. 5. The men dug a ditch ten feet deep. 6. We shall send the soldiers home in the second watch. 7. They burned about eighty towns. 8. We shall pitch our camp about twenty miles from Rome.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What does *lātum* modify ? What is it modified by ?

² Spelled also with two l's : *milliā*.

³ See 105.

⁴ What kind of a numeral is *tertiam* ?

⁵ The Romans divided the night into four equal parts named *prima vigilia, secunda vigilia, tertia vigilia, quarta vigilia*.

⁶ A Roman pace (*passus*) as a measure of length was about five feet.

⁷ *Ad* with numerals signifies *about*.

⁸ *summa, the sum total*.

⁹ *capitum Helvetiorum, of the Helvetii; lit. of the heads of the Helvetii*.



LESSON LVI.

COMPOUND NOUNS. — ABLATIVE OF TIME.

110. Compound Nouns. A. & G. 79, d: A. & S. 91: B. 151: B. & M. 176: H. 125; 126: C. 106, 1, 2.

111. Ablative of Time. A. & G. 256: A. & S. 253: B. 252, RULE XXXV!II.: B. & M. 949: G. 392: H. 429: C. 185. The *Ablative of Time* answers the questions *When? At what time? Within what time?* What question does the *Accusative of Time* answer? See 93.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Diē septimō pervēnit, he arrived ON THE SEVENTH DAY.*
2. *Proximā noctē castrā movit, THE NEXT NIGHT he broke up camp.*

VOCABULARY.

<i>di-vidō, vidērē, visī, visūm,</i>	<i>divide, separate.</i>
<i>in-cōlō, cōlērē, cōluī, cultūm,</i>	<i>inhabit, dwell.</i>
<i>jusjūrandūm, jūrisjūrandī, n.</i>	<i>oath.</i>
<i>lācūs, ūs, m.</i>	<i>lake.</i>
<i>mensīs, īs, m.</i>	<i>month.</i>
<i>pōtens, pōtentīs, adj.</i>	<i>able, powerful.</i>
<i>prō, prep. w. abl.</i>	<i>before, for.</i>
<i>respublicā, rēipublicae, f.</i>	<i>republic, commonwealth.</i>

Analyze and parse.

1. *Galli Rōmānis¹ jusjūrandūm dēdērunt.*
2. *Dixit Gallos Rōmānis jusjūrandūm dēdisse.²*
3. *Multas res jūrējūrando³*

sanxērunt (*they ratified*). 4. In⁴ rempublicam lēgātus sex lēgiōnes duxit. 5. Prō rēpublica; prō castris. 6. Pēr trēs pōtentissimos pōpulos tōtius⁵ Galliae. 7. In fines Lingōnum die quarto pervēnērunt. 8. Proxīma nocte dē quarta vīgīlia⁶ castra mōvērunt. 9. Proxīmo die Caesar ē castris cōpias suas ēduxit. 10. Sōlis occāsū suas cōpias Ariovistus īn castra rēduxit. 11. Dōmi⁷ mansērunt septēm menses.⁸ 12. Quadrāgintā trēs annos regnāvit. 13. Nītāmur⁹ ūt sōlis occāsu prōfīciscāmur.¹⁰ 14. Gallia est¹¹ omnis dīvisa¹¹ in partes trēs, quārum (*of which*) ūnam¹² incōlunt Belgae, āliam¹² Aquītāni,¹³ tertiam¹² Galli.¹³ 15. A lācu Lemanno ād montem Jūram fossam vīgintī pēdes¹⁴ lātā fōdit. 16. Dē tertia vīgīlia cūm lēgiōnibus tribus ē castris prōfectus est. 17. Dīcit hostes sūb monte castra pōsuisse mīlia¹⁴ passuum āb nostris castris octō.¹⁵

Notes.

¹ See 39.² See LN. XVII.³ See 54.⁴ in, against.⁵ Which adjectives are declined like tōtus? (24)⁶ See LN. LV., NOTE 5.⁷ See 106.⁸ See 93.⁹ See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.¹⁰ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.¹¹ est — dīvisa is the same as dīvisa — est.¹² Understand partem.¹³ Subject of incōlunt understood.¹⁴ See 109.¹⁵ octō modifies mīlia.

LESSON LVII.

PRONOUNS: PERSONAL, POSSESSIVE, AND REFLEXIVE.

112. Learn the declension of *egō, tū, suī*. A. & G. 98, c; 99, d, e; A. & S. 132, 1; 133, 4; 139, 1-3; B. 171; 172, a, b, REM. 2; 173, a; B. & M. 230-232; 234; 236; G. 97-100; H. 182, 184, 2, 3, 4, 6; 185; C. 57, 1.

Translate and parse.

1. Egō¹ sum mālus² sēd tū es bōnus. 2. Egō vōs sūb jūgum mittam. 3. Nōs vōbīs³ āmīci sūmus. 4. Nunciat nōbīs tē vēnisse. 5. Egō dē prīma vīgīlia prōfectus essem, sī tū vēnisses. 6. Nostrā consīlia hostībūs ēnunciantur. 7. Ob-sīdes intēr sēsē⁴ dant. 8. Intēr sē jusjūrandum dant. 9. Omnes linguā,⁵ instītūtis,⁶ lēgībūs⁶ intēr sē⁵ diffērunt (*differ*). 10. Helvētii suīs fīnībūs⁷ Germānōs prōhībēbant. 11. Caesar suōs milītes īn Galliam mittet sēd īn prōvinciam nostrōs.⁸ 12. Tuūs filius īn Galliam cītēriōrem īter faciēt.

Write in Latin.

1. I am a Roman but you are a Gaul. 2. He will announce to you (that) we have come. 3. Your plans will be reported to us. 4. The Helvetii and Sequani will give hostages to each other. 5. He says (that) the Gauls and Germans will give hostages to each other. 6. I shall send my soldiers home⁹ but yours into Gaul. 7. You will be friendly to us. 8. I fear that you will not¹⁰ be¹¹ friendly to us.

Notes.

¹ *Form for parsing a pronoun.* — **ēgō** is a personal pronoun ; declined, *ēgō, meī, mihī, mē, mē* ; Plural, *nōs, nostrūm or nostrī, nōbīs, nōs, nōbīs* ; made in the Nominative Singular, because it is the subject of **sūm** ; rule (see 32).

² See 64.

³ See 86.

⁴ **inter sēsē**, to each other ; lit. among themselves.

⁵ **inter sē**, from one another.

⁶ See LN. I., NOTE 5.

⁷ See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

⁸ **nostrōs**, ours : sc. **milītes**.

⁹ See 105.

¹⁰ See LN. XLIX., NOTE 4.

¹¹ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

LESSON LVIII.

PRONOUNS (*continued*): DEMONSTRATIVE.

113. Learn the declension and meanings of *hic, illē, istē, ipse, is, idēm.* A. & G. 100 - 102: A. & S. 134, REM. 6; 135: B. 173, b, 1-3: B. & M. 239; 243: G. 101; 102: H. 186, I. - VI.: C. 59; 60.

Analyze and parse.

1. Hōrūm¹ omnium fortissīmi sunt Belgae. 2. Hī omnes linguā, instītūtis, lēgibus inter sē diffērunt. 3. Eōrum² unā pars īnītium cāpit ā flūmīne Rhōdāno. 4. Mīnīme³ ād eōs mercātōres⁴ saepe commeant. 5. Eī filiam suam īn matrīmōnium dat. 6. Is sībī⁵ lēgātīōnem ād civītates suscēpit. 7. Eā res est⁶ Helvētiis ēnunciāta. 8. Eōdēm die⁷ cūm duābūs⁸ lēgionibus prōfīciscētur ēt iīs⁹ dūcibus. 9. Ipsē¹⁰ ex Helvētiis uxōrēm hābet. 10. Ipsī īn eōrum¹¹ finibus bellum gērunt. 11. Milia¹² passuum triā⁸ āb eōrum castris castra pōnit. 12. Ab iisdēm¹³ nostra consilia hostibus ēnunciantur. 13. Ipsē dē quarta vīgilia eōdem ītīnere¹⁴ ād eōs contendit ēquītātumque¹⁵ omnem antē sē mittit.

Notes.

¹ Demonstrative pronouns are used sometimes substantively and sometimes adjectively: e. g. *hī omnes diffērunt*, *all THESE differ*; *ād has suspīciōnes*, *to THESE suspicions*. In the former case parse them as nouns; in the latter, as adjectives.

² *is* is very often used as a *Personal Pronoun* of the *Third Person*, and should then be rendered by the proper case and number of *he, she, it*; e. g. *is sībī suscēpit*, *he took upon himself*; *ād eōs*, *to THEM*; *īn eōrūm finibus*, *in THEIR territory*; *ējūs milītes*, *his soldiers*; *ei dat*, *he gives to HIM*.

³ *mīnīme* modifies *saepe*.

⁶ See 67.

⁷ See 111.

⁴ See 32.

⁶ *est ēnunciāta* = *ēnunciāta est*.

⁸ See 108.

⁹ Is *is* used substantively or adjectively?

¹⁰ *ipsē* — *habet*, *he himself has*.

¹¹ See NOTE 2.

¹² See 109.

¹³ When a Demonstrative Pronoun is used as a substantive, we may supply in translation the word *one*, *man*, *men*, *persons*, or *soldiers*, if masculine; *thing* or *things*, if neuter: e. g. *hic est fortis*, *THIS ONE is brave*, or *THIS MAN is brave*; *ab iisdēm*, *by THE SAME PERSONS*; *idēm cōnantur*, *they attempt THE SAME THING*.

¹⁴ *eodēm itinēre*, *by the same route*.

¹⁵ See LN. XXIII., NOTE 2.



LESSON LIX.

PRONOUNS (*continued*): RELATIVE.

114. Declension. A. & G. 103; 104, c: A. & S. 136: B. 173, c, REM. 1: B. & M. 245: G. 103: H. 187, 2: C. 62, 1.

115. Agreement. A. & G. 198: A. & S. 206: B. 278, RULE LIII.: B. & M. 683; 684: G. 615; 616: H. 445, NOTE 1: C. 114, 1.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Aquitānia ad eam partem Oceāni, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet*, *Aquitania extends to that PART of the Ocean WHICH is near Spain*.
2. *Flūmine Rhēno, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dividit*, *by the river RHINE, WHICH separates the territory of the Helvetii from the Germans*.
3. *Proximiquē sunt Germānis, quibuscum¹ bellum gerunt*, *and they are very near TO THE GERMANS, with WHOM they carry on war*.

Analyze and parse.

1. *Proximiquē sunt Germānis*,² *quī*³ *trans Rhēnum incōlunt*. 2. *Ad montem Jūram, quī fines Sēquānōrum āb Helvētiis dividit*. 3. *Ab Ocēlo, quōd est citēriōris prōvīnciae*

oppidum⁴ extrēmum. 4. Allobrōges, quī trans Rhōdānum vicos possessionesquē habēbant, ad Caesārem vēniunt. 5. Vocat Castīcum, cūjus⁵ pāter regnum multos annos⁶ obtīnuērat. 6. Pontem,⁷ quī est ad Gēnāvam, jubet rescindi.⁸ 7. Undique loci nātūrā⁹ Helvētii continentur: ūna ex parte¹⁰ flūmīne¹¹ Rhēno¹² lātissīmo atquē altissīmo, qui¹⁶ agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dīvidit; altera¹³ ex parte monte Jūrā altissīmo, quī est intēr Sēquānos ēt Helvētios; tertiā¹⁴ lacu Lemanno ēt flūmīne Rhōdāno, quī prōvinciam nostram āb Helvētiis dīvidit.

Write in Latin.

1. They are nearest to the Aquitani, who dwell across the Garonne. 2. The Aquitani are hemmed in by the Pyrenees, which separate Aquitania from Spain. 3. He summons Titus, whose brother held the sovereignty many years. 4. The Germans, who had possessions across the Rhine, came to Geneva. 5. He came with the very¹⁵ soldiers whom we have seen. 6. He comes with the soldiers, of whom he has a very large number.

Notes.

¹ Observe that *cūm* is appended to the Ablative of Relative and Personal Pronouns.

² See 36.

³ *Form for parsing a relative.* — *quī* is a Relative Pronoun; declined, *quī, quae, quōd, cūjus*, etc. (*give its entire declension*); made in the Masculine Plural to agree with its antecedent *Germānis* (see 115); and in the Nominative, because it is the subject of *incōlunt* (32).

⁴ See 64.

⁵ *cūjus*, whose.

⁶ See 93.

⁷ See 53.

⁸ See 52.

⁹ See LN. XLV., NOTE 4.

¹⁰ *una ex parte*, on one side.

¹¹ See 54.

¹² See 25.

¹³ *altera*, second.

¹⁴ *tertiā*, sc. *ex parte*.

¹⁵ Translate *the very* by the proper case of *ipsē*.

¹⁶ A. & G. 199: A. & S. 206, (9): B. 286, d: B. & M. 694: G. 616, 3, II.: H. 445, 4: C. 113, 5.

LESSON LX.

PRONOUNS (*continued*): INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE.

116. Learn the declension of the Interrogatives **quīs** and **quī**; of the Indefinites **āliquīs** and **quīs**. A. & G. 104, *a, e*; 105, *d*: A. & S. 137, 1; 138, 1: B. 173, *d*, REM. 1, *e*, 1, 3: B. & M. 246: 249-251; 1041, *second part*: G. 104, REMARK; 105: H. 188, I., II., 1, 3; 189; 190, 1, NOTE 1: C. 62, 2, 4, 5, 13.

a. **āli-quīs** is used both as a *substantive* and as an *adjective*; as a *substantive* it is declined as follows:

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
SING.	<i>Nom.</i> ālī-quīs,	ālī-quīd,
	<i>Gen.</i> ālī-cūjūs,	ālī-cūjūs,
	<i>Dat.</i> ālī-cuī,	ālī-cuī,
	<i>Acc.</i> ālī-quēm,	ālī-quīd,
	<i>Abl.</i> ālī-quō,	ālī-quō.
PLUR.	<i>Nom.</i> ālī-quī,	
	<i>Gen.</i> ālī-quōrūm,	
	<i>Dat.</i> ālī-quībūs,	
	<i>Acc.</i> ālī-quōs,	
	<i>Abl.</i> ālī-quībūs.	

As an *adjective* it is declined:

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
SING.	<i>Nom.</i> ālī-quīs and ālī-quī,	ālī-quā,	ālī-quōd,
	<i>Gen.</i> ālī-cūjūs,	ālī-cūjūs,	ālī-cūjūs,
	<i>Dat.</i> ālī-cuī,	ālī-cuī,	ālī-cuī,
	<i>Acc.</i> ālī-quēm,	ālī-quām,	ālī-quōd,
	<i>Abl.</i> ālī-quō,	ālī-quā,	ālī-quō.
PLUR.	<i>Nom.</i> ālī-quī,	ālī-quae,	ālī-quā,
	<i>Gen.</i> ālī-quōrūm,	ālī-quārūm,	ālī-quōrūm,
	<i>Dat.</i> ālī-quībūs,	ālī-quībūs,	ālī-quībūs,
	<i>Acc.</i> ālī-quōs,	ālī-quās,	ālī-quā,
	<i>Abl.</i> ālī-quībūs,	ālī-quībūs,	ālī-quībūs.

EXAMPLES.

1. Quis mē vocat? WHO calls me?
2. Quē m vidisti? WHOM did you see?
3. Quid dōmum nōn vēnērunt? WHY have they not come home?
4. Aliquē m ad mē mittent, they will send SOMEBODY to me.
5. Aliquid accidit, SOMETHING has happened.
6. Sī quid accīdat Rōmānis, if ANYTHING should happen to the Romans.

Parse the pronouns.

1. Quis vōs vocāvit? 2. Quē m video? 3. Aliquē m vīdi.
4. Aliquōs ad eū m mīsērunt. 5. Aliquē m locum occupāvit.
6. Cū m aliquibūs principum vēnit. 7. Sī quis vēniat, laeter.
8. Quid nōn dōmi fuisti? 9. Quae est mulier quae vēnit?
10. Sī quid mīhi accīdat, nōn laetēris. 11. Sī quid Rōmānis accīdat, nōn fortītēr pugnent.
12. Aliquē m ad tē mittam.
13. Aliquīs dixit hunc esse consūlem.
14. Eū m hortābor ut cū m aliquibūs milītum prōficiascātur.
15. Vereor nē quis vēniat.
16. Vereor nē quid eī accīdat.
17. Ut aliquōs vīrōrum mittant, eos hortēmur.
18. Cū m aliquibūs principum illē vēnit.

LESSON LXI.

CONJUNCTIONS.

117. A. & G. 25, h; 154, a, b; 208: A. & S. 198, I., II., 1-11, first statement under each; 278: B. 180, the whole; 330, RULE LXXXI.: B. & M. 488-503; 1369: G. 15, IV., 3; 476; 485; 494; 500; 501: H. 309-311; 554, I., 2: C. 100; 257.

VOCABULARY.

aut, conj.

or; aut — aut, either — or.

et — et, conj.

both — and.

itāquē, conj.

accordingly, therefore.

nām , conj.	<i>for.</i>
nē , nonnē , nūm ,	interrogative particles (see NOTE 1).
nēquē , conj.	<i>and not</i> ; nēquē — nēquē , <i>neither</i> — <i>nor</i> .
postquām , conj.	<i>after, as soon as.</i>
proptēreā , adv.	<i>for this reason.</i>
quamquām , conj.	<i>although.</i>
quōd , conj.	<i>because.</i>
sēd , conj.	<i>but.</i>

Translate, and parse² the conjunctions.

1. Impērātor ē³t magnus ē³t fortis est. 2. Nēquē³ magni nēquē fortes sunt consūles. 3. Dux nōn magnus est sēd fortis. 4. Dumnōrīgēm vōcat eīquē⁴ filiam suam īn mātrīmōnium dat. 5. Itāquē rem suscēpit. 6. Hōrūm⁵ omnium fortissīmi sunt Belgae, proptēreā quōd ā cultu atquē hūmānītātē prōvinciae longissīme⁶ absunt. 7. Helvētii īter pār prōvinciam faciunt, proptēreā quōd āliud⁷ īter hābent nullum.⁷ 8. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus⁸; nām omnis cīvitas Helvētia īn quattuor pāgos dīvīsa est. 9. Aut⁸ suis fīnīb⁹us eos prōhībent, aut ipsi¹⁰ īn eōrum fīnīb⁹us bellum gērunt. 10. Miles, quamquām est fortis, nōn pugnābit. 11. Postquām Caesar pervēnit, itā respondit. 12. Fortisnē¹¹ est consul? 13. Nonnē fortes sunt consūles? 14. Nūm fortis est consul? 15. Sī quīd hābērēm,¹² īd tībi dārem. 16. Nītītur ūt vincat.¹³ 17. Nonnē consūles dōmum vēnērant? 18. Nūm Tītus lēgātus circūm Gēnāvam hiemāvit?

Notes and Questions.

¹ **nē** is used to ask for information merely; **nonnē**, when the answer *yes*, and **nūm**, when the answer *no* is expected or implied; e. g. **bōnusnē est puer?** *is the boy good?* **nonnē bōnus est puer?** *is not the boy good?* i. e. the boy is good, is he not? **nūm bōnus est puer?** *the boy is not good is he?*

² To parse a conjunction is to tell whether it is coördinate or subordinate; to which subdivision of its class it belongs; what it connects: e. g. in sentence 6, **quōd** is a *subordinate conjunction*, because it connects a subordinate with a principal clause; *causal*, because it introduces a reason; it connects the subordinate clause **proptēreā** — **absunt** with the principal clause **hōrūm** — **Belgae**.

² When a conjunction is doubled, as *et — et*, *aut — aut*, the first strengthens the union or opposition denoted by the second.

⁴ See 39 and LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

⁵ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 1.

⁶ See LN. XLII.

⁷ See 24.

⁸ Use the same word, *Tigurinus*, in translation.

⁹ See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

¹⁰ What does *ipsi* emphasize?

¹¹ The interrogative particle *nō* is appended to the first word of its clause.

¹² *hāberem*, *I had*.

¹³ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

LESSON LXII.

CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

118. A good knowledge of the subject treated under the following References will aid materially in translating and understanding the *Ablative Absolute*, *Subjunctive Mood*, and *Indirect Discourse*. A. & G. 171 - 182, *coarse and fine print*: A. & S. 200 - 203, *coarse print*: B. 203, *a-g*; 288, *a-f*: B. & M. 1399 - 1401; 1404; 1405; 1407; 1408; 1411; 1413: G. 192; 193; 474, 1-4; 475; 505 - 508: H. 345 - 351; 354 - 361: C. 107; 108.

VOCABULARY.

cīvis, *is*, m. and f.

citizen.

in-fluō, *fluōrē*, *fluxī*, *fluxūm*,

flow into, empty.

inter-ficiō, *ficiōrē*, *feci*, *fectūm*,

kill.

poscō, *poscōrē*, *pōposcī*, (no supine)

demand.

*postquā*m, conj.

after, as soon as.

re-spondeō, *spondērē*, *spondī*, *sponsūm*,

reply, answer.

Translate and analyse¹ the following sentences.

1. *Ejus rei pōpūlus Rōmānus est testis.* 2. *Divico respondit² ejus rei pōpūlum Rōmānum essē testem.* 3. *Hic pāgus ūnus Lūcium Cassium consūlem interfecērat ēt ejus exercitūm sūb jūgum mīsērat.* 4. *Postquā*m Caesar pervēnit, obsīdes pōposcit. 5. *Flūmen³ est Arar, quōd in Rhōdānum*

influit. 6. Caesar ā lăcu Lemanno, qui în flūmen Rhōdănum influit, ād montem Jūram, qui fīnes Sēquănōrum āb Helvētiis dīvidit, fossam perdūcit. 7. Quis⁴ es? Cīvis Rōmānus sum. 8. Rēlinquēbātur ūna pēr Sēquănos via, quā proptēr angustias īre (*to go*) nōn pōtērant. 9. Ob eas causas eī mūnitiōni,⁵ quam fēcērat, Tītum Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit. 10. Vēni ūt tē vīdeam.

Write in Latin.

1. Did the enemy send our army under the yoke? 2. They will not send us home will they⁶? 3. Did he not demand hostages as soon as he arrived? 4. Who are those men? They are Roman citizens. 5. Who has come to see us? 6. The Rhone is a river which empties into the sea. 7. One way is left through the Alps by which we shall not be able to march on account of the enemy. 8. We shall either keep the Gauls from our territory or carry on war with them. 9. This man is both great and good. 10. We shall march through Gaul because we have no other way.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XXXVI., EXAMPLES and NOTES.

² What is the object of *respondit*?

³ See 64.

⁴ See 64; what is the subject of *es*?

⁵ See 67.

⁶ See LN. LXI., NOTE 1.



LESSON LXIII.

PARTICIPLES.

119. Definition. A. & G. 25, *e*; 289: A. & S. 148, 1, (1.) - (4.): B. 53, *d*: B. & M. 265, *last clause*: H. 548: C. 65, 4.

120. Distinctions of Tense. A. & G. 290 : A. & S. 274, 2 : B. 323, RULE LXXV. : B. & M. 1343 : G. 278 ; 279 : H. 550 : C. 249.

121. Used for a Subordinate Clause. A. & G. 292 : A. & S. 274, 3 : B. 318 : B. & M. 1350 : G. 667-671 : H. 549, 1-5 : C. 250.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Sēsē omnes flentes Caesāri ād pēdes prōjēcērunt, all*
WEeping threw themselves down at Caesar's feet.
2. *Liscus multos dies mōrātus prōfectus est, Liscus HAVING*
DELAYED many days set out ; or, Liscus, AFTER HE HAD
DELAYED many days, set out.
3. *Caesar eōrum prēcibus adductus bellum suscepit, Caesar*
HAVING BEEN INFLUENCED by their entreaties undertook the
war ; or, Caesar, BECAUSE HE HAD BEEN INFLUENCED by
their entreaties, undertook the war.
4. *Helvētīi ējus adventu commōti lēgātos mittunt, the Helvētīi*
BECAUSE DISTURBED (or, BECAUSE THEY HAVE BEEN DIS-
TURBED) by his arrival send legates.

VOCABULARY.

<i>ad-dūcō, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm,</i>	<i>lead to, influence.</i>
<i>flēō, flērē, flēvi, flētūm,</i>	<i>weep.</i>
<i>in-dūcō, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm,</i>	<i>lead into, induce.</i>
<i>pētō, pētērē, pētīvi and pētīi, pētītūm,</i>	<i>beseech, ask, beg for.</i>
<i>prō-jiciō, jicērē, jēcī, jectūm,</i>	<i>throw forward ; sē prōjicērē,</i>
	<i>to throw one's self down.</i>

Analyze, and parse the participles.

1. Omnes flentes¹ pācem pētīerunt.
2. Mūliēres flentes
3. vīros² implōrābant.
4. Belgae spectant in ōrientem sōlem.
5. Hostes in nostros vēnientes tēla conjīciēbant.
6. Milītes sēsē Tīto³ ād pēdes prōjīcient.
7. Helvētīi his rēbus⁴ adducti⁵
8. cūm proxīmis cīvītātībūs pācem confirmant.
9. Liscus ōrātiōne adductus lōcūtus est.
10. Hac ōrātiōne adducti
11. intēr sē⁶ jusjūrandum dant.
12. Is⁷ regni cūpīdītāte in-

ductus conjūratiōnem nobilitātis fecit. 10. Sēquāni paucos dies mōrāti ad⁸ Gēnāvam prōfecti sunt. 11. Helvētīi omnium rērum inōpiā adducti lēgātos ad eum⁷ mīsērunt. 12. Caesar dē tertiā vigīlia prōfectus ad⁹ Gēnāvam pervēnit.

Write in Latin.

1. The soldiers weeping throw themselves down at the feet of Cassius. 2. Our (soldiers) hurl weapons against the advancing enemy. 3. The Gauls, after they had delayed a few days, set out towards Rome. 4. Ariovistus, because he had been disturbed by Caesar's arrival, sent legates to him.⁷ 5. The Germans having delayed a few days came across the Rhine. 6. The Gauls, because disturbed by Caesar's arrival, send legates to him.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Parse a participle like an adjective (LN. VI., NOTE 1), giving in addition the principal parts of its verb and the different participles formed from the verb.

² *vīros, husbands.*

³ See 39; translate as if it were a Genitive.

⁴ See 54.

⁵ Imitate the Examples in translating the participles.

⁶ See LN. LVII., NOTE 4. ⁷ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

⁸ *ad, towards, for.*

⁹ *ad, in the vicinity of.*

¹⁰ What participles has a transitive verb? See LN. XXXIII., NOTE 5.



LESSON LXIV.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

122. A. & G. 255 and NOTE: A. & S. 257, REMARKS 1, 2: B. 264, RULE XLIX., *a-c*: B. & M. 964-966: G. 408; 409: H. 431, 1, 2, 4: C. 187, 1, 2, 3.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Marco Messalā ēt Marco Pisōne consūlībus**, *Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso consuls*; or better, *in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso*.
2. **Hoc responso dāto discessit**,

a. <i>this reply having been given</i> b. <i>when this reply had been given</i> c. <i>having given this reply</i> d. <i>after giving this reply</i> e. <i>after he had given this reply</i>	}	he departed.
---	---	--------------

VOCABULARY.

con-vertō, vertēre, vertī, versūm,	<i>turn about, change.</i>
dis-cēdō, cēdērē, cessī, cessūm,	<i>depart.</i>
ibī, adv.	<i>there.</i>
rē-linquō, linquērē, liquī, lictūm,	<i>leave behind, leave.</i>
responsūm, ī, n.	<i>answer, reply.</i>
rē-vertor, vertī, versūs sūm,	<i>return.</i>

Analyze and parse.

1. Hāc ōrātiōne¹ hābītā² Caesar concīlium dīmīsīt. 2. Hāc ōrātiōne āb Divitiāco hābītā omnes auxiliūm pētiērunt. 3. Hāc ōrātiōne hābītā conversae sunt omnium mentes. 4. Convōcātis eōrum⁸ princīpībus Caesar grāvīter⁴ eos accūsāt. 5. Marco Messalā ēt Marco Pisōne consūlībus conjūrātiōnem nobīlītātis fēcīt. 6. Ibī Centrōnes⁵ lōcis supēriōrībus occūpātis ītīnēre⁶ exercītum prōhībēre cōnantur. 7. Mūnītis castris duas ībī lēgiōnes rēlīquit ēt partem auxiliōrum. 8. Hōc proelio trans Rhēnum nunciāto Suēvi dōmum⁷ rēverti coepērunt (*began*). 9. Convōcātis eōrum princīpībus, quōrum⁸ magnam cōpiam īn castris hābēbat, grāvīter eos accūsāt. 10. Hōc proelio trans Rhēnum nunciāto Suēvi, qui ād rīpas Rhēni vērānt, dōmum rēverti coepērunt.

Write in Latin.

1. When this speech had been delivered by Caesar all begged for⁹ peace. 2. After giving this reply all departed. 3. He came to Rome⁷ in the consulship of Titus and Cassius. 4. Having fortified the camp he set out with a part of the auxiliaries. 5. After this battle had been reported across the Rhone the Sequani began to return home.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The learner should exercise skill and taste in translating the Ablative Absolute; in analyzing tell what relation it bears to the rest of the sentence.

² *hābita*, from *hābĕo*, signifying *hold, deliver, make*.

³ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

⁴ From what adjective is *grāviter* derived? What is the Stem of the adjective? What is the ending of the adverb? See LN. XLII.

⁵ See General Vocabulary.

⁶ See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

⁷ See 103.

⁸ What is the gender and number of *quōrū*? Why? (115) In what case is it? Why? (40)

⁹ *for* belongs to the *verb*; *peace* must be rendered by the *Accusative*.



LESSON LXV.

IRREGULAR VERBS: **FERO**.

123. Learn the entire conjugation of *fĕrō*. A. & G. 139: A. & S. 179: B. 109, IV.: B. & M. 422-424: G. 186: H. 292: C. 85, 1.

Conjugate and give a complete synopsis of each verb.

1. Dux suis¹ auxĭlium fert. 2. Auxĭlium milĭtĭbus² ā dūce fertŭr. 3. Sĭ dux suis auxĭlium fĕrāt,³ laetentur.³ 4. Sĭ auxĭlium milĭtĭbus ā dūce fĕrātŭr,³ laetentur.³ 5. Ii⁴ suis auxĭlium ferrĕ nōn pōterant. 6. Fertĕ, milĭtes, vestris¹ auxĭ-

lium. 7. Pöpulus Römānus diū injūrias tülýt. 8. Injūriae ā pöpulo Römāno diū lātae sunt. 9. Pöpulum Römānum hortātus est üt⁵ diū injūrias ferrent.⁵ 10. Caesar dixýt pöpulum Römānum diū injūrias tülissē. 11. Nümērus eōrum,⁴ qui⁶ arma fērēbant, magnus fuit. 12. Nümērus eōrum, ā quībus arma fērēbantūr, magnus fuit. 13. Nümērus eōrum, qui arma ferrē pötērant, magnus fuit. 14. Nümērus eōrum, ā quībus arma ferri pötērant,⁷ parvus fuit. 15. Sī Gallis auxiliū ferrēs, Galli vincērent. 16. Sī quis⁸ Römānis auxiliū tülissēt, vīcissent.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The *Plural Masculine* of Possessive Pronouns is often used alone where in translation some such word as *men, soldiers, friends*, may be supplied; the *Plural Neuter*, where we may supply *things, possessions*.

² See 39.

³ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 4.

⁴ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

⁵ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

⁶ See 115.

⁷ See LN. XLV., NOTE 8.

⁸ What is *quis* when immediately preceded by *si, nisi, ne, or num*? How is it declined? · See LN. LX.



LESSON LXVI.

COMPOUNDS OF FERRO. — ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

124. Ablative of Specification. A. & G. 253 : A. & S. 250 : B. 261, RULE XLVI. : B. & M. 880 : G. 398 : H. 424 : C. 180. This answers the question *In what respect*?

EXAMPLES.

1. Virtūte praecēdunt, *they excel* IN COURAGE.

2. Nūmēro ād duōdēcīm, *about twelve* IN NUMBER.

VOCABULARY.

af-fērō,	af-ferrē,	at-tūli,	al-lātūm,¹	<i>bring to, carry to, offer.</i>
con-fērō,	con-ferrē,	con-tūli,	col-lātūm,	<i>bring together, carry together, collect.</i>
dis-fērō,	dis-ferrē,	dis-tūli,	di-lātūm,	<i>carry different ways; differ.</i>
in-fērō,	in-ferrē,	in-tūli,	il-lātūm,	<i>bring into, bring upon, make upon.</i>
rē-fērō,	rē-ferrē,	rē-tūli,	rē-lātūm,	<i>bring back, carry back.</i>

Analyze and parse.

1. Hi omnes linguā,² institūtis,² lēgibus² intēr sē differunt.
 2. Oppīda sua omnia nūmēro² ād duōdēcim³ incendunt.
 3. Eō⁴ circitēr⁵ hōmīnum nūmēro sēdēcim milia³ mīsīt.
 4. Helvētīi rēlīquos Gallos virtūte praecēdunt. 5. Helvētīi tōtī Gallīae⁶ bellum infērēbant. 6. Pars cīvītātis Helvētīae insignem cālāmītātem pōpūlo Rōmāno intūlērat. 7. Helvētīi mīnus faciēle finītīmīs bellum inferrē pōtērant.⁷ 8. Obsīdes, arma, servi confēruntur. 9. Aedui dixērunt frūmentum conferri.⁸ 10. Caesar sarcīnas¹⁰ in ūnum lōcum conferri⁸ jussīt.⁹ 11. Helvētīi cūm omnībūs suis carrīs sēcūti¹¹ impēdīmēta¹⁰ īn ūnum lōcum contūlērunt. 12. His responsīs¹² ād Caesārem rēlātīs ītērūm ād eum Caesar lēgātos cūm his mandātīs mittit.

Write in Latin.

1. All differed from one another in language and laws.
 2. They will burn their cities, about five in number. 3. The Romans will make war upon the Gauls.⁶ 4. I fear that the Romans will make¹³ war upon the Gauls. 5. Let¹⁴ us make war upon both the Germans and the Belgae. 6. The baggage will be collected into one place. 7. The Gauls, having followed with all their horses, collected the wagons.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Accent the compounds of *fēro* correctly: *affēro*, *afferre*, *attūli*, *allātum*.

² See 124.

³ See 108.

⁴ *ed* is an adverb; see GEN. VY.

⁵ *circitēr* modifies the numeral.

⁶ See 67.

⁷ *pōtērant*, *could*.

⁸ See 52.

⁹ *jussit*, from *jūbeo*.

¹⁰ What is the difference between *sarcīnae* and *impēdimenta*? See General Vocabulary under *sarcīna* and *impēdimentum*.

¹¹ *sēcūti* from *sēquor*; where is it made?

¹² See 122.

¹³ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

¹⁴ See LN. XXIX., EX. 7.



LESSON LXVII.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued*): **VOLO** AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

125. Learn the conjugation and meanings of *vōlō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*.
A. & G. 138: A. & S. 178: B. 109, VI.: B. & M. 417-419: G. 189: H. 293: C. 85, 3, 4, 5.

VOCABULARY.

<i>ā-vertō</i> , <i>vertērē</i> , <i>verti</i> , <i>versum</i> ,	<i>turn away.</i>
<i>mālō</i> , <i>mallē</i> , <i>mālui</i> ,	<i>be more willing.</i>
<i>nōlō</i> , <i>nollē</i> , <i>nōlui</i> ,	<i>be unwilling, not wish.</i>
<i>undē</i> , adv.	<i>from which place, whence.</i>
<i>vācō</i> , <i>ārē</i> , <i>āvī</i> , <i>ātum</i> ,	<i>be unoccupied.</i>
<i>vōlō</i> , <i>vellē</i> , <i>vōlui</i> ,	<i>be willing, wish.</i>

Conjugate and give a synopsis of the verbs.

1. *Aeduos*¹ *flāgītāre*² *Tītus frūmentum*¹ *vult*. 2. *Helvētiis*³ *bellum inferre vōlūmūs*. 3. *Galli fīnītīmīs bellum inferre vōlūerant*. 4. *Sī lēgātus pugnāre vēlīt, hostes fūgiant*. 5. *Nūm*⁴ *prōfīcisci dē tertiā vīgīlia vultīs?* 6. *Dumnōrix quām*⁵ *plūrīmas civītātes hābēre vōlēbāt*. 7. *Consul impēdimenta*⁶ *īn ūnum lōcum conferri vult*. 8. *Sī vīs mē*⁶ *flēre*.

9. Montem ā Cassio occūpāri vōluīt. 10. Mons, quem⁶ ā Lābiēno occūpāri vōluīt, āb hostībus tēnētur. 11. Dīcit vellē sēsē⁶ dē rēpublica⁷ cūm eo lōqui. 12. Caesār āb Helvētiis discēdēre² nōlēbāt. 13. Nōluīt eum lōcum vācāre Liscus. 14. Dixit Caesārem āb Helvētiis discēdēre² nollē. 15. Nōluīt eum lōcum, undē Helvētīi discessērāt, vācāre. 16. Vir injūrias diū ferre nōlēt. 17. Sī lēgātus īter faciēre nōlit, milītes laetentur. 18. Vēreor nē⁸ dux suis auxiliū ferre nōlīt.⁸ 19. Iter āb Arāre Helvētīi āvertērāt ā quībus discēdēre nōlēbāt. 20. Pugnāre² Helvētīi mālunt quām fūgēre.² 21. Nonnē māvīs tuis⁹ auxiliū ferrē quām fūgere? 22. Omnes virtūte¹⁰ praecēdēre māvult quām essē consul. 23. Gallis prōdesse quām bellum inferrē māluit. 24. Exercītui praeesse mālēt quām dōmī¹¹ mănēre.

Write in Latin.

1. You do not wish to burn the town, do you⁴? 2. They will wish to make war upon the Romans.⁸ 3. I fear that the soldiers will not be willing⁸ to collect the baggage. 4. Let us be willing to follow with all our baggage. 5. If Caesar had been willing to fight, the soldiers would not have fled. 6. Titus does not wish this place to be unoccupied. 7. He will be unwilling to bring aid to his⁹ (friends). 8. You had been unwilling to make war upon (your) neighbors. 9. He will be more willing to fight than to flee. 10. The man was more willing to excel all in valor¹⁰ than to be rich.

Notes.

¹ See 71.² See A. & G. 271, a : A. & S. 273, 4 : B. 315, f, 3 : B. & M. 1152 ; 1153 : G. 424 : H. 533 : C. 241.³ See 67.⁵ See LN. XLII., NOTE 7.⁷ See 110.⁹ See LN. LXV., NOTE 1.¹¹ See 106.⁴ See LN. LXI., NOTE 1.⁶ See 53.⁸ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.¹⁰ See 124.

LESSON LXVIII.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued*): EO AND FIO.

126. Learn the conjugation and meanings of **eō** and **fiō**. A. & G. 141; 142: A. & S. 180; 182, REM. 3: B. 109, II., V.: B. & M. 413-415; 426-429: G. 185; 188, REMARK: H. 294; 295, 1, 3: C. 85, 2, 7.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Dē Caesāris adventu certior factus est**, *he was informed of Caesar's arrival.*
2. **Caesar certior factus est hostes castra pōsuisse**, *Caesar was informed that the enemy had pitched a camp.*
3. **Caesārem certiōrem faciunt hostes transire**, *they inform Caesar that the enemy is crossing.*

VOCABULARY.

certūs, ā, ūm,	<i>certain, sure; certior fieri, to be informed; lit., to be made more certain.</i>
eō, irē, ivi, itūm,	<i>go.</i>
ex-eō, irē, ii, itūm,	<i>go out, go forth, depart.</i>
fiō, fieri, factūs sūm,	<i>be made, become, occur.</i>
trans-eō, irē, ii, itūm,	<i>go across, cross.</i>

Conjugate the verbs and parse.

1. **Dōmum**¹ eunt; **Rōmam** ībo; **Bibracte**¹ eāmūs.² 2. **Pēr angustias** ībāmūs; **pēr Gallōrum fīnes** īvērunt. 3. **I**,³ **mīles**, **dōmum**; **itē**, **pueri**, **dōmum**. 4. **Hostes** **pēr nostram prōvinciam** īvērant. 5. **Lēgātus Bibracte** **irē** contendit. 6. **Caesar cūm his quinque lēgiōnībus** **irē**⁴ contendit. 7. **In eam partem Galliae** **ītūrōs**⁵ **essē Helvētios** dixit. 8. **Proptēr angustias** **irē**⁴ **nōn pōtērant**. 9. **Helvētii dē fīnībus suis cūm omnībus cōpiis** **exībant**. 10. **Nītuntur** **ūt ē fīnībus exeant**.⁶ 11. **Magnus nūmērus eōrum**⁷ **dōmo**⁸ **exibit**. 12. **Hic**

pāgus ūnus dōmo patrum nostrōrum mēmōriā⁹ exiērāt.¹⁶
 13. Flūmen Helvētii rātibus¹⁰ transībant. 14. Sī flūmen
 transeant,¹¹ eos vincāmus. 15. Sī hostes Rhōdānum transīrē
 cōnentur, prōhībeāmus. 16. Boii¹² trans Rhēnum incōluērant
 ēt īn agrum Norīcum¹³ transiērant. 17. Undīquē ūno tem-
 pōre īn hostes impētus fiēbāt. 18. His rēbus¹⁴ fiēbāt.
 19. Dē ējus⁷ adventu Helvētii certiōres facti sunt. 20. Cae-
 sar eōdem die āb explōrātōrībūs certior factūs suas cōpias
 praemittēre vōlēbat. 21. Duo vīri consūles¹⁵ factī ērunt.
 22. Pēr explōrātōres Caesar certior factūs est Sēquānos pēr
 prōvinciam īter fēcissē.¹⁶

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ What question do dōmum and Bibracte answer? See 105, a.
² See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7. ³ In what is the Imperative used? (47)
⁴ See 69. ⁵ Why is itūros in the Acc. Plural?
⁶ How is the Subjunctive with ūt to be translated after verbs of *striving*
 and *endeavoring*?
⁷ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.
⁸ What question does dōmo answer?
⁹ See 111. ¹⁰ rātis, is, f. raft.
¹¹ See LN. XXIX., Ex. 1. ¹² See GEN. VY.
¹³ See 79. ¹⁴ See 64.
¹⁵ See Ex. 2. ¹⁶ exiērāt = exivērāt.



LESSON LXIX.

DEFECTIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

127. Defective Verbs. A. & G. 143, a-c, NOTE: A. & S. 183, 1-3: B. 111, b, REM. 1, 2: B. & M. 434-437: G. 190, 5: H. 297, I., 2: C. 86, 5, 6.

128. Impersonal Verbs. A. & G. 145: A. & S. 184, 1: B. 112; 113: B. & M. 451; 452; 454: G. 199: H. 298; 299: C. 87.

129. Infinitive as Subject. A. & G. 270: A. & S. 269, *coarse print*: B. 315, a, b: B. & M. 1147: G. 423: H. 538: C. 236, 1.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Perfácilē est impērio pōtīri** (129), *it is very easy TO GET POSSESSION OF the government.*
2. **Mīhi ire** (129) *licet*, *it is permitted me TO GO ; or, I may go.*
3. **Mīhi ire** *licuit*, *it was permitted me TO GO ; or, I might have gone.*
4. **Rōgat ūt id sibi facēre liceat**, *he asks that it be permitted him TO DO this ; better, he asks permission to do this.*
5. **Rōgābat ūt id sibi facēre licēret**, *he was asking that it be permitted him TO DO this ; or, permission to do this.*
6. **Me ire** (129) *oportet*, *it is necessary that I should go ; or, I ought to go.*
7. **Me ire** *oportuit*, *it was necessary that I should go ; or, I ought to have gone.*
8. **Dīcit me ire oportēre**, *he says it is necessary that I should go ; or, he says that I ought to go.*

Analyze and parse.

1. **Mēmīnerunt**,¹ *ōdērunt*. 2. **Mēmīnēram** **Tītum**, *vīdēram* **Cassium**. 3. **Memento** *vēnīre*²; *dīcit sē mēmīnis*. 4. **Liscus** *dixit* **Dumnōrigem** *ōdisse* **Caesārem** *ēt* **Rōmānos**. 5. **Et** *tē* *ēt* *illum*³ *ōdērāmus*. 6. **Nēquē**⁴ *mē* *nēquē* *eum* *ōdit*. 7. **Divitiācus** *multis cūm lacrimis* **Caesārem** *obsēcrāre*⁵ *coepit*. 8. **Suēvi**, *qui*⁶ *ād rīpas Rhēni* *vēnērānt*, *dōmum rēverti* *coepērunt*. 9. **Omnes** *milītes* **Rhōdānum** *transīre* *coepērunt*. 10. **Frūmentum**⁷ *conferri*⁸ *oportet*. 11. **Nos**⁷ **Rhēnum** *transīre* *oportuit*.⁹ 12. **Dīcit** *illum* *ād sē* *vēnīre* *oportēre*.¹⁰ 13. **Caesārem** *dē ejus adventu certīorem*¹¹ *fīeri* *oportuit*. 14. **Rōgāvērunt** *ūt sibi*¹² *licēret* *concīlium tōtīus Galliae* *convōcāre*. 15. **Rōgāvit** *ūt sibi* *ire* *licēret*. 16. **Tībi** *eo die* *ire* *licēbit*. 17. **Perfácilē est** *tōtīus Galliae* *impērio pōtīri*. 18. **Tībi** **Caesārem** *certīorem* *facēre* *dē meo adventu* *licet*.¹³ 19. **Tībi** *dōmum* *ire* *licuit*.¹⁴

Write in Latin.

1. We shall go home. 2. Are you going home? 3. You ought to go home. 4. We ought to have gone home. 5. You can go to Geneva; you may go to Geneva; you ought to go to Geneva. 6. You could have gone to Bibracte; you might have gone to Bibracte; you ought to have gone to Bibracte. 7. You are not going to Rome are you? 8. Are you not going to Rome? 9. Who will go home with me? 10. He says that corn ought to be collected. 11. We shall ask that it be permitted us to go home. 12. Let us go home.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What is a Defective Verb? What is an Impersonal Verb?

² See 52.

³ *illum*, *that one*; see LN. LVIII., NOTES 1 and 13.

⁴ See LN. LXI., NOTE 3.

⁵ See 69.

⁶ Where is *qui* made and why?

⁷ See 53.

⁸ See 129.

⁹ See EXAMPLE 7.

¹⁰ In this sentence *illum* is the subject of *vēnīre*; *illum* — *vēnīre*, the subject of *oportēre*; *illum* — *oportēre*, the object of *dicit*.

¹¹ See LN. LXVIII., EX. 1.

¹² How does this *sibi* differ from the *sibi* in sentence 15?

¹³ What is the subject of *habet*?

¹⁴ See EXAMPLE 3.

**LESSON LXX.****THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS. — DATIVE OF AGENT.**

130. Periphrastic Conjugations. A. & G. 109, *a*; 129: A. & S. 162, 14, 15: B. 94, *a*, *b*: B. & M. 328; 329: G. 149; 150; 239; 243: H. 233; 234: C. 82.

131. Dative of Agent. A. & G. 232: A. & S. 225, III.: B. 248, RULE XXXVI.: B. & M. 847: G. 353: H. 388: C. 157.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Doctūrus sūm**, *I am about to teach; I intend to teach; I am to teach.*
2. **Doctūrus ērat (fuit)**, *he was about to teach; he was intending to teach; he was to teach.*
3. **Audiendī sūmus**, *we must be heard; we ought to be heard.*
4. **Tībi (131) audiendī sūmus**, *you must hear us; you ought to hear us.*
5. **Agri consūli vastandī ērant (fuērunt)**, *the consul had to lay waste the fields.*
6. **Vexillum prōpōnendum ērat**, *the flag had to be displayed.*
7. **Oppidūm oppugnandum ērit**, *the town will have to be stormed.*
8. **Oppidūm vōbis mūnlendum ērit**, *you will have to fortify the town.*

Translate¹ and parse.

1. Obsīdes tībi dātūrus sum.² 2. Caesar mīhi obsīdes dātūrus fuit. 3. Ariovistus Rōmānos victūrus fuit. 4. Hostes ād rīpas Rhēni ītūri sunt. 5. Nunciat hostes ād rīpas Rhēni ītūros essē. 6. Frūmentum³ Aeduos³ flāgītātūrus lēgātus ērat. 7. Dōmum ītūri sūmus. 8. Patriae⁴ prōfūtūri estis. 9. Nōbis⁵ bellum gērendum ērit. 10. Duo consūles creandi sunt. 11. In hostes vēnientes tēla nōbis conjīcienda ērant. 12. Oppidūm lēgātō expugnandum ērit. 13. Pēr Alpes milītibus īter faciendum ērit. 14. Frūmentum Aeduis dandum est.⁶ 15. Urbs dēlenda est. 16. Caesāri īn Galliam mātūrandum est.⁷ 17. Caesar mātūrandum sībi essē existīmāvit. 18. Dē ējus adventu Caesar certior⁸ fāciendus est. 19. Caesāri omnia ūno tempōre ērant āgenda: vexillum prōpōnendum,⁹ quod¹⁰ ērat insigne, quūm ād arma concurrī¹³ ōportēret¹¹; signum tūba dandum⁹; āb ōpēre rēvōcandi¹² milītes; qui¹⁶ paulo longius¹⁴ aggēris pētendi causā¹⁵ prōcessērant arcessendi¹²; ācies instruenda,⁹ milītes cōhortandi.¹²

Write in Latin.

1. I intend to write a letter. 2. I was intending to go to Bibracte. 3. The lieutenant was to storm the town. 4. My brother is about to go to the city. 5. The Gauls intend to carry on war with their neighbors. 6. The boys must hasten home. 7. We must carry on war with our neighbors. 8. You will have to fortify the town. 9. We shall have to exhort the soldiers. 10. The consul had to give the signal. 11. The city will have to be fortified. 12. The town had to be stormed.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ Imitate the Examples in translation.
- ² Give the Synopsis and Conjugation of each Periphrastic form.
- ³ See 71. ⁴ See 67.
- ⁵ See 131 and Example 8; what is the literal translation?
- ⁶ What are the different translations of this sentence? See 39 and 131.
- ⁷ *mātūrāndum est* has no *personal* subject; verbs which do not take a Direct Object in the Active Voice have only the *impersonal* construction in the Passive.
- ⁸ See L.N. LXVIII., EXAMPLE 1. ⁹ Supply *ērat*.
- ¹⁰ Why is *quod* in the Neuter Singular?
- ¹¹ See L.N. LXIX., EXAMPLES 6 and 7; what is the subject of *oportēret*? Translate by the Indicative.
- ¹² Supply *ērant*. ¹³ *concurri*, to rush.
- ¹⁴ *paulo longius*, a little too far.
- ¹⁵ *aggēris* — *causā*, for the purpose of seeking materials for a mound.
- ¹⁶ The antecedent of *qui* is *ii*, which is the subject of *arcessendi* (*ērant*).



LESSON LXXI.

USE OF THE DATIVE.

132. Dative with Intransitive Verbs. A. & G. 226; 227: A. & S. 223, REM. 2; 225, I.: B. 241, RULE XXIX.; 244, RULE XXXII.: B. & M. 824; 831: G. 345: H. 385, I., II., and NOTE 3. C. 153; 155.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Civītāti (132) persuāsit ūt exīrent,**¹ *he persuaded THE STATE to go forth.*
2. **Novis rēbus studēbat,** *he was eager FOR A REVOLUTION; lit., for new things.*
3. **Allobrōgībus impērāvit,** *he gave orders TO THE ALLOBROGES.*
4. **Plācuit ei (132) ut mittēret,**¹ *it pleased HIM to send.*
5. **Sī Allobrōgībus satisfaciāt,** *if he should give satisfaction TO THE ALLOBROGES.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Hoc² facilius eis persuāsit, quōd⁸ undīquē loci nātūrā⁴ Helvētii continentur. 2. Is, Marco Messāla ēt Marco Pisōne consūlībus,⁵ regni cūpīdītātē inductus⁶ conjūrātiōnem nobīlītātis fēcīt ēt civītātī²⁰ persuāsīt, ūt dē finībus suis cūm omnībus cōpiis exīrent.¹ 3. Persuādēt Raurācis ēt Tulingis, finītīmīs,⁷ ūtī, eōdem ūsī⁸ consīlio,⁹ oppīdis⁵ suis vīcisquē exustis,¹⁰ ūnā cūm iis prōfīciscantur.¹ 4. Orgētōrix cūpīdītātē regni adductus⁶ nōvis rēbus¹¹ studēbat. 5. Liscus dixīt Dumnorīgem fāvēre Helvētīis sēd ōdisse¹² Caesārem ēt Rōmānos. 6. Caesar Allobrōgībus impērāvit ūt iis frūmenti cōpiam fācērent.¹ 7. Quamobrem plācuit¹³ ei ūt ād Ariovistum lēgātōs mittēret. 8. Huic lēgiōni Caesar indulserāt praecīpuē. 9. Sī¹⁴ Aeduis dē¹⁵ injūriis, quas ipsis¹⁶ sociisquē eōrum¹⁷ intūlērint,¹⁸ itēm sī Allobrōgībus sātisfāciant, cūm iis pācem fāciāt.

Write in Latin.

1. We persuaded the men to go¹ forth. 2. They persuaded the Allobroges to go to Rome. 3. We shall persuade the Helvetii more easily for this reason,² because they are hemmed in on all sides by mountains. 4. We shall endeavor to persuade (our) neighbors to adopt⁸ the same plan, burn up¹⁰ their houses and set out¹ in company with us.

5. We shall favor neither the enemy nor our friends. 6. He will give satisfaction to the citizens for¹⁵ the wrongs which he has brought upon them¹⁶ and their¹⁷ allies. 7. We can¹⁹ not give you satisfaction for all the wrongs which we have brought upon you.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3. ² See 79.
³ *quōd* is a conjunction; what kind of a clause does it introduce?
⁴ See LN. XLV., NOTE 4 and 79. ⁵ See 122.
⁶ See LN. LXIII., EXAMPLES. ⁷ See 25.
⁸ *ūsi* from *ūtōr*, to adopt; lit., having adopted, made use of.
⁹ See 104.
¹⁰ *oppīdis — exustis*, to burn up their towns, etc.; lit., their towns, etc. having been burned up. (122)
¹¹ See Ex. 2.
¹² What kind of a verb is *ōdisse*? (127)
¹³ *plācuit* is an impersonal verb in this sentence; what is its subject?
¹⁴ Sc. *satisficiant*. ¹⁵ *de*, for.
¹⁶ See 67. ¹⁷ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.
¹⁸ *intulērint* from *infēro*; render it by the Perfect Indicative.
¹⁹ See LN. XXVIII., Ex. 1.
²⁰ *civitātī*, state, is used here for *civibus*, citizens; hence the dependent clause has *exirent* instead of *exiret*.



LESSON LXXII.

USE OF THE ABLATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE.

133. Ablative with Comparatives. A. & G. 247: A. & S. 256, 2: B. 261, RULE XLVI., c: B. & M. 895: G. 399: H. 417: C. 174.

134. Subjunctive expressing a Wish or Command. A. & G. 266; 267: A. & S. 260, REM. 6: B. 309, RULE LXVIII.: B. & M. 1193; 1197: G. 247; 249; 253; 256: H. 483; 484, I., II., IV.: C. 203, 1 and note.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Nōn amplius milibus (133) passuum octōdēcim ābērat,**
he was not more THAN EIGHTEEN MILES distant.
2. **Nihil virtūte (133) mēlius est,** *nothing is better THAN VIRTUE.*
3. **Cīves mei sint (134) beāti,** *MAY my fellow-citizens BE happy.*
4. **Amēmus (134) pātriam,** *LET US LOVE our country.*
5. **Vēniat (134),** *LET HIM COME.*
6. **Nē hōdie prōficiscāmur (134),** *LET US not SET OUT to-day.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Quid virtūte mēlius est? 2. Scīmus sōlem māiōrem
essē terrā. 3. Amīcītia, quā¹ nīhil mēlius hābēmus, nōbis² ā
dis³ immortalībus dāta est. 4. Haec⁴ sunt dulciōra melle.
5. Milītes fortiōres sunt impērātōre. 6. Caesar ab oppīdo
nōn amplius milibus passuum duōbus castra pōsuit. 7. Ab urbe
nōn amplius milibus passuum quinquē castra pōnēmus. 8. Ipse
āb hostium castris nōn longius mille⁵ ēt quingentis passibus
ābērat. 9. Quōd ā Bibracte, oppīdo Aeduōrum longē maxīmo
ēt cōpiōsissīmo, nōn amplius milibus passuum octōdēcim
ābērat, rēi frūmentāriae prospīciendum⁶ existīmāvit:⁷ iter⁸ āb
Helvētiis āvertit āc Bibracte ire contendit. 10. Milītes vēniant.
11. Sītis⁹ beāti. 12. Hos latrōnes interfīciāmus. 13. Cae-
sārem dē ējus adventu certiōrem faciāmus. 14. Ad Bibracte
dē quarta vīgīlia nē prōficiscāmur. 15. Lēgātus certior fiat
dē meo consīlio. 16. Iter cēlērīus pēr Galliam faciāmus.
17. Cīvītātī¹⁰ persuādeāmus ūt exeant.¹¹ 18. Nōvis rēbus nē
stūdeāmus. 19. Hostībus patriae nē faveāmus. 20. Aeduis
dē injūriis, quas eōrum sōciis¹² intūlīmus, sātisfaciāmus.

Write in Latin.

1. This man is bigger than Caesar. 2. Nothing is better
than friendship. 3. The lieutenant is braver than the gen-
eral. 4. We are not more than twenty miles from the city.

5. May we be brave. 6. Let us set out in the third watch.
 7. Let us look out for supplies. 8. Let us not kill these men.
 9. Let us persuade the citizens to go forth. 10. May it please¹³ you to send ambassadors to Caesar. 11. Let the enemy come. 12. Let us make haste to go home.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ See 133. ² See 39.
³ See 20. ⁴ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 13.
⁵ Is *mille* in this sentence an adjective or substantive? See 108.
⁶ Sc. *essē*. See 130.
⁷ *rēi* — *existimāvit*, *he thought that he ought to look out for supplies.*
⁸ Introduce the translation of this clause with *accordingly*.
⁹ See EXAMPLE 3. ¹⁰ See 132.
¹¹ See LN. LXXI., NOTE 20. ¹² See 67.
¹³ See LN. LXXI., Example 4.

LESSON LXXIII.

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE. — SUBJUNCTIVE IN FINAL CLAUSES.

135. Sequence of Tenses. A. & G. 283–286 : A. & S. 258, A, B, I., 1, 2 : B. 61; 311, RULE LXX. : B. & M. 1163; 1164 : G. 216; 510 : H. 198; 490–493 : C. 234.

136. Subjunctive of Purpose. A. & G. 317, REMARK : A. & S. 262; 264, 5 : B. 295, RULE LVIII. ; 299, RULE LXI. : B. & M. 1205; 1207 : G. 543–546; 632 : H. 497, I., II. : C. 206. This answers such questions as *For what purpose?* *With what design?* *With what aim?* *To what end?* *Why?* *What?*

EXAMPLES.

1. Vēnit	} <i>ut videat,</i>	<i>he comes</i>	} TO SEE, IN ORDER TO SEE, THAT HE MAY SEE.
2. Vēniet		<i>he will come</i>	
3. Vēnit		<i>he has come</i>	
4. Vēnerit		<i>he will have come</i>	

- | | | | | |
|-------------|---------------|---------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| 5. Vēniēbat | } ūt vīdēret, | he was coming | } TO SEE, IN ORDER | |
| 6. Vēnit | | he came | | TO SEE, THAT HE |
| 7. Vēnērat | | he had come | | MIGHT SEE. |
8. Ut consēqui posset pontem fēcit, *he made a bridge THAT HE MIGHT BE ABLE to pursue.*
9. Postulāvit nē Aeduis bellum inferret, *he demanded THAT HE SHOULD NOT MAKE war UPON the Aedui.*
10. Equitātum qui sustinēret impētum mīsit, *he sent cavalry TO WITHSTAND the attack.*
11. Nē offendēret vērēbātur, *he was fearing THAT he should offend.*
12. Ut socii vēnīrent vērēbātur, *he was fearing THAT the allies would NOT come.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Allobrōgibus impērāvit, ūt iis frūmenti cōpiam faciērent.
2. Caesar Dumnōrigem mōnet, ūt in rēliqum tempus¹ suspiciōnes vitet. 3. Nām, nē ejus supplīcio² Divitiāci ānīmum offendēret, vērēbātur. 4. Dumnōrigi persuāsit ūt idēm³ cōnārētur. 5. Cōpias suas Caesar in proximū collem subducit equitātumquē, qui sustinēret hostium impētum, mīsit. 6. Lēgātos ad eum mittunt qui dicant agros consūli⁴ vastandos esse.⁵
7. Postulāvit nē aut Aeduis⁶ aut eōrum sociis⁶ bellum inferret. 8. Nonnulli pūdōre adducti,⁷ ūt tīmōris suspiciōnem vitārent, rēmānēbant. 9. Caesar omnium ex conspectu rēmōtis ēquis,⁸ ūt spem fugae tollēret, cōhortātus⁹ suos¹⁰ proelium commisit. 10. Caesar ad Ariovistum lēgātos mīsit, qui ab eo postulārent, ūti āliquem¹¹ lōcum mēdium utriusque¹² collōquio¹³ dicēret. 11. Castella commūnit, quo¹⁴ facilius, si sē invito¹⁵ transire cōnārentur, prōhibēre possit.

Write in Latin.¹⁶

1. I shall give orders to the Gauls to furnish us with a supply of corn. 2. He had given orders to the Sequani to furnish a supply of corn to the soldiers. 3. We shall advise

him¹⁷ to avoid suspicions in the future.¹ 4. We have advised Cassius to avoid suspicions in the future. 5. We advised Cassius to avoid suspicions in the future. 6. Caesar was fearing that Dumnorix would not avoid suspicions in the future. 7. We shall send cavalry to withstand the attack of the Gauls. 8. Caesar, after removing his horse⁸ out of sight, urged his men to fight bravely. 9. He demanded that they should not make war either upon us or upon our allies. 10. We shall fortify the place that¹⁴ we may be able to more easily withstand an attack.

Notes and Questions.

¹ in *reliquum tempus*, in the future ; lit., into the remaining time.

² See 79.

³ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 13 ; where would *idem* be made ?

⁴ See 131.

⁵ See 130 and 62.

⁶ See 67.

⁷ See LN. LXIII., EX. 3.

⁸ See 122 and EXAMPLES.

⁹ See LN. LXIII., EX. 2.

¹⁰ See LN. LXV., NOTE 1.

¹¹ How declined ? See 116, a.

¹² *medium utriusque*, midway between both ; *uterque* is declined like *uter*. (24)

¹³ See 39.

¹⁴ *quo* is preferred to *ut* when its clause contains a comparative.

¹⁵ *se invito*, against his will ; see 122 ; lit., he unwilling.

¹⁶ In writing these imitate carefully the preceding Latin sentences.

¹⁷ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.



LESSON LXXIV.

USE OF THE DATIVE (*continued*).

137. Dative of the Person possessing. A. & G. 231 : A. & S. 226 : B. 243, RULE XXXI. : B. & M. 821 : G. 349 : H. 387 : C. 156.

138. Two Datives. A. & G. 233 : A. & S. 227, REM. 3 : B. 246, RULE XXXIV. : B. & M. 848 : G. 350 : H. 390, I., II. : C. 161.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Est mīhi (137) dōmi pāter, I have a father at home; lit., a father is to me at home.**
2. **Sex vīro (137) filii fuērunt, A MAN had six sons.**
3. **Haec mīhi (138) sunt cūrae, these (things) are A CARE TO ME; lit., these (things) are FOR A CARE TO ME.**
4. **Tertiam āciem nostris subsīdio mīsīt, he sent the third line AS A RELIEF TO OUR (MEN).**
5. **Nōvissimis praesīdio ērant, they were A PROTECTION TO THE HINDMOST.**

Analyze and parse.

1. Mīhi est āmicus; tībi sunt plūrīmi āmīci. 2. Magni pēdes sunt meo fratri sēd cāput parvum. 3. Erit consūli magnus exercitus. 4. Impērātōri fuērunt milītes multi ēt¹ fortes. 5. Virtus est vīro hōnōri. 6. Dixit haec sībi essē cūrae. 7. Quinquē cōhortes castris praesīdio rēlīquit. 8. Lēgātō² impērāvit ūt quinquē cōhortes castris praesīdio rēlinquēret.³ 9. Magno ūsui nostris fuit. 10. Nām ēquītātui,⁴ quem⁵ auxīlio Caesāri Aedui mīsērant, Dumnōrix praeērat. 11. Gallis magno ād pugnam⁶ ērat⁷ impēdimento, quōd nōn sātīs commōdē pugnāre pōtērant. 12. Boii ēt Tulingi, qui hōmīnum milībus⁸ circītēr quīndēcīm agmen hostium claudēbant ēt nōvissimis⁹ praesīdio ērant, ex ītīnēre¹⁰ nostros circumvērēre.¹¹ 13. His rēbus¹² cognītis Caesar Gallōrum anīmos verbis¹³ confirmāvit pollīcītusquē est sībi eam rem cūrae fūtūram.¹⁴ 14. Ariovistus dixit āmicītiām pōpūli Rōmāni sībi ornāmento ēt praesīdio nōn dētrīmento essē¹⁵ ōportēre.¹⁶

Write in Latin.

1. My friend has four sons. 2. The lieutenant had many soldiers. 3. He will leave two legions as a protection to the camp. 4. The cavalry, which the lieutenant sent, was a great protection to the rear. 5. It was a great hindrance to us in

battle that we could¹⁷ not fight with sufficient ease. 6. He will order the lieutenant² to send¹⁸ soldiers as a relief to our men. 7. He ordered the lieutenant to send soldiers as a relief to our men. 8. The consul ought¹⁶ to send soldiers as a relief to us.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. VI., NOTE 5.

² See 132.

³ Why is the Subjunctive used ? (136) Why the Imperfect Tense ? (135)
What question does *ut* — *relinqueret* answer ? (136)

⁴ See 67.

⁵ *quem* ; why is the Masculine Singular used ? Why the Accusative ?

⁶ *ad pugnam*, in battle.

⁷ The subject of *erat* is the substantive clause *quod* — *poterant*.

⁸ Is *millibus* used as a noun or as an adjective ? (108) ; see also 54.

⁹ *novissimis*, to the hindmost ; lit., to the newest.

¹⁰ *ex itinere*, on the march.

¹¹ What is the other ending of the Perfect Indicative Active 3d Plural ?

¹² See 122.

¹³ See 54.

¹⁴ Sc. *esset*.

¹⁵ See 129.

¹⁶ See 128 and Ex. 8.

¹⁷ See LN. XXVIII., Ex. 2.

¹⁸ See 136.

LESSON LXXV.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

139. Subjunctive of Result. A. & G. 319, d ; 332, a : A. & S. 262, REM. 3 ; 264, 1, 6, 7 : B. 296, RULE LIX. ; 297, RULE LX. ; 301, RULE LXII. : B. & M. 1218-1220 : G. 553-558 ; 551, 1, 2 : H. 500, I, II. ; 501, I, 1 ; 504 : C. 207 ; 208 ; 209 ; 223.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Tantus timor exercitum occupavit ut omnium mentes perturbaret*, such fear seized the army THAT IT DISTURBED the minds of all.

2. Dixit nōn sē tā̃m barbārum essē ūt nōn sciret, *he said he was not so uncivilized AS not TO KNOW.*
3. Fiēbat ūt mīnus lātē vāgārentur, *it happened THAT THEY ROAMED ABOUT less extensively.*
4. Rētīnēri nōn pōtērant quin tēla conjicērent, *they could not be prevented FROM HURLING weapons.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Milītes nūmēro¹ tā̃m multi ērant, ūt agmīni² nōvissīmo magno praesīdio³ essent.³ 2. His rēbus⁴ fiēbat⁵ ūt ēt mīnus lātē vāgārentur ēt mīnus fācīle finītīmīs bellum inferre possent. 3. Ariovistus dixit nōn sē tā̃m barbārum essē, ūt nōn sciret bello⁶ Allobrōgum proxīmo Aeduos Rōmānis auxīlium nōn tūlisse. 4. Tantus sūbīto tīmor omnem exercītum occūpāvit, ūt nōn mēdiocrītēr omnium mentes⁷ anīmosquē perturbāret. 5. Mons autēm altissīmus impendēbat, ūt⁸ fācīle perpauci prōhībēre possent. 6. Divīco respondit: Itā⁹ Helvētios ā mājōrībūs suis instītūtos essē,¹⁰ ūti obsīdes accīpēre, nōn dāre, consuērint.¹¹ 7. Ita dies¹² circītēr quīndēcīm īter fēcēront, ūti intēr nōvissīmum hostium agmen ēt nostrum prīmum¹³ sex milia passuum interessent. 8. Ipse autēm Ariovistus tantos sībī¹⁴ spīrītus, tantam arrōgantiam sumpsērat, ūt fērendus¹⁵ nōn vīdērētur. 9. Germāni rētīnēri nōn pōtērant quin īn nostros tēla conjicērent.

Write in Latin.

1. Such fear seized the men that they all fled. 2. Such fear seizes the men that they all flee. 3. We are so many in number¹ that we can easily keep their¹⁷ army from the march.¹⁶ 4. For these reasons⁴ it happened that they easily kept our army from the march.¹⁶ 5. For these reasons it happens that they make war upon their neighbors. 6. They marched in such a manner that four miles intervened between their rear and our van.¹⁸ 7. This man assumes¹⁹ such lofty airs

that he does not seem endurable.¹⁵ 8. The lieutenant assumed such lofty airs that he did not seem endurable.¹⁵ 9. The Romans could not be prevented from making¹⁸ war upon their neighbors.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ See 124. ² See 138.
³ Why the *Imperfect*? (135)
⁴ his *rēbus*, for these reasons; see 79.
⁵ What is the subject of *fiēbat*? ⁶ See 111.
⁷ How do *mens* and *animus* differ in signification? See GEN. VY.
⁸ *ut*, so that. ⁹ *ita* modifies *institutos esse*.
¹⁰ *institutos esse* is object of *rēpondit*. (52)
¹¹ See A & G. 128, a: A. & S. 162, 7: B. 95, d: B. & M. 315: G. 151, 1: H. 235: C. 84; 7.
¹² See 93. ¹³ *primum*, sc. *agmen*; render *van*.
¹⁴ See 39.
¹⁵ *fērendus*, *endurable*; lit. (one) to be endured.
¹⁶ See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6. ¹⁷ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.
¹⁸ See EXAMPLE 4. ¹⁹ to assume, *sibi sūmere*.



LESSON LXXVI.

USE OF THE GENITIVE.

140. *Genitive with Adjectives.* A. & G. 218: A. & S. 213: B. 234, RULE XXIII.: B. & M. 765: G. 373: H. 399: C. 136, 2.

141. *Genitive in Predicate.* A. & G. 214, c: A. & S. 211, REM. 8, (1)–(3): B. 230, REM. 1: B. & M. 780: G. 365: H. 401: C. 135.

142. *Genitive with certain Verbs.* A. & G. 219: A. & S. 216: B. 235, RULE XXIV.: B. & M. 788: G. 375: H. 406, II.: C. 137, 1, 2.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Qui rēi (140) militāris pēritissimus hābēbātur*, who was considered very skilful in military science.

2. **Bellandi (140) cūpīdi, desirous OF CARRYING ON WAR.**
3. **Jūdicium impērātōris (141) est, the decision is THE GENERAL'S ; or, belongs TO THE GENERAL.**
4. **Gallia est pōpūli (141) Rōmāni, Gaul belongs TO THE Roman PEOPLE.**
5. **Rēmīniscātur pristīnae virtūtis (142) Helvētiōrum, let him recollect THE former VALOR of the Helvetii.**
6. **Vētēris contūmēliae (142) oblivisci vult, he is willing to forget THE old INSULT.**

Analyze and parse.

1. Lēgātus belli pēritus¹ hābētur. 2. Lēgātus nititur ut belli pēritus fiat.² 3. Nitēbatur ut rēi milītāris pēritissimus fīeret.³ 4. Publius Considius, qui rēi milītāris pēritissimus hābēbatur ēt⁴ in exercītu Luci Sullae ēt postea in Marci Crassi⁴ fuerat, cūm explōrātōribus praemittitur. 5. Ariovistus dixit sē nōn tām impēritum esse rērum, ut nōn sciret⁶ Aeduos auxilio⁷ pōpūli Rōmāni nōn ūsos esse.⁸ 6. Milītes hortābor, ut glōriae sempēr memōres sint. 7. Nos mōnuit ut virtūtis sempēr mēmōres essemus. 8. Qua dē causa⁹ hōmīnes bellandi¹⁰ cūpīdi magno dōlōre affīciēbantur. 9. Dicit ipsum esse Dumnōrigem cūpīdum nōvārum rērum. 10. Dīcunt dē summa belli¹¹ jūdīcium impērātōris esse¹² sē existīmāvisse.¹² 11. Nēquē jūdīcat Galliam pōtius esse Ariovisti quām pōpūli Rōmāni. 12. Milītum est fortītēr pugnāre ;¹³ impērātōris est impērāre. 13. Divīco Caesārem hortātur ut rēmīniscātur ēt¹⁴ vētēris incommōdi pōpūli Rōmāni et pristīnae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. 14. Caesar rēcentium injūriārum oblivisci nōn vult.¹⁶ 15. Omnis contūmēliae obliviscāmur.

Write in Latin.

1. I am not considered very skilful in war.¹⁶ 2. I shall strive to become² skilful in war. 3. This lieutenant, who had been in Sulla's army and afterwards in Caesar's and was

considered skilful in battle, was sent forward with soldiers.
 4. These soldiers are very desirous of carrying on war.¹⁰
 5. The decision concerning the general management¹¹ of affairs belongs¹⁷ to the consul. 6. This house is Caesar's. 7. We ought to forget insults.¹⁸ 8. Let us forget all wrongs.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 64.² See 126 and 136.³ Why Imperfect? (135)⁴ In *Marci Crassi*, sc. *exercitu*; translate, in that of *Marcus Crassus*.⁵ *Et* connects *hābebātur* and *fuērat*.⁶ See 139 and Example 2.⁷ See 104.⁸ *Usos esse* depends upon *sciret*.⁹ *qua de causa*, for this reason.¹⁰ *bellandi* is a Gerund; parse it like a noun.¹¹ *de summa belli*, concerning the general management of the war.¹² *esse* depends upon *existimāvisse*; *existimāvisse* upon *dicunt*.¹³ See 129.¹⁴ See LN. LXI., NOTE 3.¹⁵ See 125.¹⁶ See 140.¹⁷ See EX. 3.¹⁸ See 142.

LESSON LXXVII.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

143. A. & G. 304-308: A. & S. 261, 1, 2: B. 305, a, 1-3; 306, RULE LXVI.: B. & M. 1259-1268: G. 590; 591; 596-599: H. 506; 507, I.-III.: C. 215, 1, 2, 3, 4.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Sī vincit, laetātur*, if he is conquering, he is rejoicing.
2. *Sī vincet, laetābitur*, if he conquers (shall conquer), he will rejoice.
3. *Sī vicērit, laetābitur*, if he conquers (shall have conquered), he will rejoice.

4. *Sī vincat, laetētur, if he should conquer, he would rejoice.*
5. *Sī vinceret, laetārētur, if he were conquering, he would be rejoicing.*
6. *Sī vicisset, laetātus esset, if he had conquered, he would have rejoiced.*

Analyze and parse.

1. *Sī pugnat, vincit.* 2. *Sī pugnābit, vincet.* 3. *Sī pugnāvērīt, vincet.* 4. *Sī pugnet, vincat.* 5. *Sī pugnāret, vinceret.* 6. *Sī pugnāvisset, vicisset.* 7. *Sī Helvētīi Allobrōgībus¹ sātisfācient, cum iis pācem fāciam.* 8. *Sī Helvētīi Allobrōgībus sātisfāciant, cūm iis pācem fāciam.* 9. *Caesar dīcit sī Helvētīi Allobrōgībus sātisfāciant, sēsē cūm iis pācem esse factūrum.²* 10. *Sī quid³ vultis,¹⁰ rēvertīmīni.⁴* 11. *Sī pācem pōpulus Rōmānus cūm Helvētīis faciet, in eam partem ibunt¹¹ Helvētīi ubī eos esse vōluēris.⁵* 12. *Sīn bello⁶ persēqui⁷ persēvērābis,⁸ rēmīniscere⁴ ēt vētēris incommōdi⁹ pōpūli Rōmāni ēt pristīnae virtūtis Helvētīōrum.* 13. *Sī vētēris contūmēliae oblivisci vellem,¹⁰ nūm¹² ētiām rēcentium injūriārum mēmōriam dēpōnere⁷ possem?* 14. *Sī id fiet, prōvinciae¹³ pērīcūlōsum ērit.* 15. *Caesar dīcit sī nēmō¹⁴ sēquātur, sē cūm sōla dēcīma lēgiōne ītūrum essē.¹¹*

Write in Latin.

1. If he is satisfying the Aedui,¹ he is rejoicing. 2. If he satisfies the Aedui, he will rejoice. 3. If he should satisfy the Aedui, he would rejoice. 4. If he were satisfying the Aedui, he would be rejoicing. 5. If he had satisfied the Aedui, he would have rejoiced. 6. If you wish anything,⁸ ask. 7. If they make peace with us, we shall go into that part where they wish⁶ us to be. 8. But if they persist in pursuing⁸ us with war,⁶ let them recall to mind¹⁵ our former valor.⁹ 9. If we were willing to forget the old misfortune, could we also get rid of the remembrance of recent insults?

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ See 132. ² *essē factūrum = factūrum essē.*
³ See 116 and Ex. 6. ⁴ See 47.
⁵ What does the Future Perfect Tense denote? (42)
⁶ See 54. ⁷ See 69.
⁸ *persēqui persēvērō, I persist in pursuing.*
⁹ See 142. ¹⁰ See 125.
¹¹ See 126.
¹² What answer is implied? See LN. LXI., NOTE 1.
¹³ See 86.
¹⁴ The Genitive and Ablative of *nōmo* are rare: these cases are supplied by *nullius* and *nullo* (from *nullus*, 24).
¹⁵ See 134.



LESSON LXXVIII.

USE OF THE ABLATIVE.

144. Ablative expressing Measure (Degree) of Difference. A. & G. 250: A. & S. 256, REM. 16: B. 262, RULE XLVII.: B. & M. 229: G. 400: H. 423: C. 176.

144, a. Ablative of Quality. A. & G. 251: A. & S. 211, REM. 6: B. 263, RULE XLVIII.: B. & M. 888: G. 402: H. 419, II.: C. 175. This is called sometimes *the Ablative of Characteristic*, sometimes *the Descriptive Ablative*.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Altērum iter multo (144) expēditius ērat, the other route was MUCH more passable.*
2. *Mātūrius paulo (144) dōmum contendit, he hastens home A LITTLE sooner.*
3. *Ipsūm Dumnōrigem, summā audāciā (144, a), Dumnorix himself, (a man) OF THE GREATEST BOLDNESS.*
4. *Summa hūmānitāte (144, a) ādōlescens, a youth OF THE HIGHEST CULTURE.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Caesar multo grāvius quēritūr.¹ 2. Multo māior ālacritas exercītui² injecta est. 3. Altērū inter pēr prōvinciam nostram ērat, multo fācīlius atquē expēditus, proptēreā quōd intēr fines Helvētiōrum ēt Allobrōgum, qui nūpēr pācāti ērant, Rhōdānus fluit. 4. Caesar ūnā aestātē³ duōbus maxīmis bellis⁴ confectis mātūrius paulo, quām tempus anni postulābat, in hīberna in⁵ Sēquānos exercītum dēduxit. 5. Post ējus mortem nīhīlo mīnus Helvētii id, quōd constītuerant,⁶ fācere cōnantur, ūt ē finībus suis exeant.⁷ 6. Rēliqum spātium mons contīnet magnā altītūdīne, itā, ūt rādīces⁸ montis ex utrāque parte⁹ rīpae¹⁰ flūmīnis contingant.¹¹ 7. Galli ingenti magnītūdīne corpōrum Germānos,¹² incrdībīli virtūte atquē exercītatiōne in armis essē¹³ praedicābant. 8. Commōdissimum vīsum est¹⁴ Cāium Vālērīum Procillum, summā virtūte ēt hūmānitāte ādōlescentem, ād eum mittēre. 9. Rēpērit ipsum esse Dumnōrīgē, summā audāciā, magnā āpūd plēbem proptēr libērālītatem grātiā, cūpīdum¹⁵ rērum¹⁶ nōvārum.

Write in Latin.

1. He censures the soldiers much more severely. 2. He censured me a little more severely than the remaining soldiers. 3. The route through our province is much more practicable than through the territory of the Sequani. 4. The lieutenant led his army into winter-quarters among⁵ the Aedui a little sooner than the time of year demanded. 5. We shall none the less attempt to do that which we have resolved (to do). 6. Caius is a youth of extraordinary valor. 7. We have seen mountains of great height. 8. It seemed¹⁴ most suitable to send to him Titus, a youth of extraordinary practice in arms.

Notes.

- ¹ See 103.
² See 67.
³ See 111.
⁴ See 122.
⁵ in, among.
⁶ constituant, sc. facere.
⁷ ut — exant is an appositive to id; for the mood, see 139; translate,
to go forth.
⁸ See 34.
⁹ ex utrâque parte, on each side.
¹⁰ See 32.
¹¹ See 139.
¹² See 53.
¹³ See 52.
¹⁴ What is the subject of visum est? (139)
¹⁵ See 64.
¹⁶ See 140.

LESSON LX.XIX.

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

145. A. & G. 313, a-c: A. & S. 263, 2: B. 292, c, RULE LVI.; 303, d, RULE LXIV.: B. & M. 1281-1284: G. 605-609: H. 514; 515, I.-III.: C. 204, 1, 2; 214, 3; 225.

EXAMPLES. 24

1. Quūm pugnātum sit, *although they fought* ; lit., *it was fought*.
2. Licēt victoriā glōriētur, *although he glories in victory*.
3. Quamvis cāreret nōmine, *although he was without the name*.
4. Etsi vidēbat, tāmēn nōn pūtābat, *although he saw, yet he did not think*.

Analyze and parse.

1. Quūm fortitēr pugnent, tāmēn nōn vincent. 2. Quūm Sēquāni Rōmānis¹ sātisfēcērint, tāmēn lēgātus pācem cūm iis nōn faciit. 3. Quūm ea² itā sint, tāmēn, sī obsīdes āb iis sibi dentur,³ cūm iis pācem faciāt.³ 4. Nām hoc tōto proelio,⁴ quūm āb hōra septīma ād vespērum pugnātum sit,⁵ āversum hostem vīdēre nēmo pōtuit. 5. Licet⁶ me hortētur, nōn pugnābo. 6. Licet miles vulnērātus sit, tāmēn laetātur. 7. Li-

cet Helvētīi sua victōria⁷ glōrientur, tāmēn ūter faciēnt nōn pēr nostram prōvinciam. 8. Erat dignitāte⁸ rēgia, quamvīs cārēret nōmīne.⁹ 9. Quamvīs sint sūb āqua, sūb āqua mālēdicēre tentant. 10. Caesar, etsī prōpē exacta jām aestas ērat, tāmēn eō¹⁰ exercītum adduxit. 11. Nām etsī sīnē ullō pēricūlo lēgiōnis¹¹ dēlectae cūm ēquītātu proelium fōre¹² vīdēbat, tāmēn committendum¹³ nōn pūtābat. 12. Itā dies circitēr quīndēcīm ūter fēcērunt, ūtī intēr nōvissīmum hostium agmen ēt nostrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnis¹⁴ aut sēnis mīlibus¹⁵ passuum intēresset.¹⁶

Write in Latin.

1. Although they fought bravely, yet they did not conquer.
2. Although these things are so, yet we shall make peace with them.
3. No one fled in this whole battle, although they fought from the fifth hour till sunset.
4. We cannot see the mountain, although it is of great height.⁸
5. The lieutenant did not lead his army into winter-quarters, although the summer was almost gone.
6. He thinks that he ought to begin¹³ battle, although he sees that it will not be without danger to the legions.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 132.² See LN. LVIII., NOTE 13.³ See LN. LXXVII., Ex. 4. What is the force of this conditional clause? (143)⁴ See 111.⁵ See Ex. 1.⁶ *Ueēt* is properly an Impersonal Verb (128), Present Tense, with *ūt* (*that*) omitted; hence it is followed only by the *Present* and *Perfect Subjunctive*. (135) What is the literal translation?⁷ See 79.⁸ See 144, a.⁹ See Ex. 3.¹⁰ *eō*, *thither*.¹¹ A. & G. 217; A. & S. 211, REM. 2, last part; B. 233, RULE XXII.: B. & M. 746; G. 361, 2; H. 396, III; C. 133, 3.¹² *fōre* = *fūtūrum essē*. (62)¹³ *committendum*, sc. *essē*; see 130.¹⁴ *quīnis*, etc., *than five*, etc. *each day*.¹⁵ See 133.¹⁶ See 139.

LESSON LXXX.

USE OF THE ABLATIVE (*continued*).

146. Ablative of Price. A. & G. 252 : A. & S. 252 : B. 258, RULE XLIII., c : B. & M. 884 : G. 404 : H. 422 : C. 179. This answers such questions as *For how much ? At what price ?*

147. Ablative of Distance. A. & G. 257, b : A. & S. 236 : B. 262, RULE XLVII. : B. & M. 958 : G. 335, REMARK 1 : H. 379, 2 : C. 176. This answers the question *How far ?*

148. Ablative with Adjectives. A. & G. 245, a : A. & S. 244 : B. 261, RULE XLVI., a : B. & M. 919 : G. 373, REMARKS 1-4 : H. 421, III. : C. 179, 2.

EXAMPLES.

1. Dŏmum duŏbus tālentis (146) ēmit, he bought a house FOR TWO TALENTS.
2. Oppĭdum parvo prĕtĭo (146) vendĭdit, he sold the town AT A SMALL PRICE.
3. Milĭbus (147) passuum quattuor ēt vĭgintĭ absunt, they are TWENTY-FOUR MILES distant.
4. Dignus est mājŏrĭbus (148), he is worthy OF (his) ANCESTORS.

Analyze and parse.

1. Hic¹ mercēde puēros ēt puellas dŏcet. 2. Vĭgintĭ tālentis ūnam ōrātiŏnem Isocrātes vendĭdit. 3. Vendĭdit hic auro patriam. 4. Victŏria nŏbis² multo sanguĭne stĕtit.³ 5. Vĕreor nē victŏria iis multo sanguĭne stet.⁴ 6. Quŭm Rŏmāni vĭcĕrint,⁵ tāmĕn victŏria iis multo sanguĭne stĕtit. 7. Septĭmo die āb explŏrātŏrĭbus certior factus⁶ est Ariovisti cŏpias⁷ ā nostris⁸ milĭbus passuum quattuor ēt vĭgintĭ ābesse.⁹ 8. Hic lŏcus aequo fĕrē spātio āb castris Ariovisti ēt Caesāris ābĕrat. 9. Lĕgiŏnem Caesar, quām ēquis¹⁰ dĕvexĕrat, passibus dūcentis āb eo tŭmŭlo constituit. 10. Itĕm ēquĭtes

Ariovisti p̄ri intervallo constītērunt.¹¹ 11. Eōdem die castra prōmōvit ēt milībus passuum sex ā Caesaris castris sūb monte consēdit. 12. Hī pueri patrībus indigni sunt. 13. Hic imp̄rator immortalītate dignus est. 14. Līcēt¹² hī milītes fortissīmi sint, tāmēn mājōrībus indigni sunt. 15. Puērū hortēmur ūt mājōrībus dignus sit.¹³ 16. Nulla vox est āb iis audīta pōpūli Rōmāni mājestate ēt sūp̄eriōrībus victōriis indigna.

Write in Latin.

1. This man¹ will teach for wages. 2. I shall sell my house at a small price. 3. He is by no means rich, although he sells⁵ houses at a large price. 4. I fear that I shall not sell⁴ my house at a large price. 5. We are about fifteen miles from the city. 6. We shall station the third legion three hundred paces from the hill. 7. He will station his cavalry at nearly an equal distance from the same place. 8. We shall move forward our camp on the same day, and encamp at the foot of a mountain ten miles from Geneva. 9. I fear that these girls are not worthy of their mother. 10. Let us urge the soldiers to be¹³ worthy of their country.

Notes.

¹ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 13.

² See 39.

³ See GEN. VY. under st̄b.

⁴ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

⁵ See 145.

⁶ See LN. LXVIII., EX. 2.

⁷ See 53.

⁸ Sc. cōpiis.

⁹ ābessē depends upon the idea of saying contained in ab — factus est, *he was informed by scouts that, etc.*, i. e. who said that, etc.

¹⁰ ēquis, *on horseback*; see 54.

¹¹ See consistō, GEN. VY.

¹² See LN. LXXIX., NOTE 6.

¹³ See 136.

LESSON LXXXI.

CAUSAL CLAUSES.

149. A. & G. 321, a, b, c; 326: A. & S. 263, 5; 264, 8; 266, 3: B. 302, RULE LXIII.: B. & M. 1250; 1251; 1255: G. 538 - 541; 587; 636: H. 516, I., II.; 517: C. 214, 3; 224; 232.

EXAMPLES.

1. Quū impētus sustinēre nōn possent, altēri sē in montem rēcēpērunt, *since they could not withstand the attacks, one party withdrew upon the mountain.*
2. Caesar injūriam faciēbat qui vectigālla dētēriōra faciēret, *Caesar was doing wrong because he was making the revenues decrease.*
3. Aedui questi sunt quōd Harūdes fines eōrum pōpūlārentur, *the Aedui complained because (as they said) the Harudes were laying waste their territory.*
4. Quōd ā Bibracte ābērat, rei frūmentāriae prospiciendum existimāvit, *because he was distant from Bibracte, he thought that he must look out for supplies.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Perfācile est, quū virtūte¹ omnibus praestētis, tōtius Galliae impērio² pōtiri.³ 2. Orgētōrix dixit perfācile essē, quū virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtius Galliae impērio potiri. 3. Quū magna ex parte⁴ eōrum prēcibus⁵ adductus bellum suscepērit, quērītur. 4. Caesāri quū id nūciātum esset, mātūrat āb urbe prōficisci. 5. Diūtius⁶ quū nostrōrum⁷ impētus sustinēre nōn possent, altēri sē, ūt coepērant,⁸ in montem rēcēpērunt, altēri ād impēdimenta ēt carros suos sē contūlērunt. 6. In fines Lingōnum die quarto pervēnērunt quū propter vulnēra mīlitum nostri trīdūm mōrāti eos sēqui nōn pōtuisent. 7. Ariovistus dixit magnam Caesārem

injūriam faciēre qui suo adventu vectīgālia dētēriōra⁹ faciēret. 8. Grāvītēr eos accūsāt quōd āb iis nōn sublēvētur. 9. Multo¹⁰ ētiām grāvius quōd sit destitūtus quērītur. 10. Proptēr frīgōra, quōd Gallia sūb septemtriōnībus pōsita est,¹¹ frūmenta īn agris mātūra nōn ērant. 11. Eo autēm frūmento,² quōd¹² flūmīne Arāre nāvībus¹³ subvēxerat, proptēreā mīnus ūti¹⁴ pōterat, quōd īter āb Arāre Helvētii āvertērant, ā quībus discēdēre nōlēbat.¹⁵ 12. Quōd ā Bibracte, oppīdo Aeduōrum longē maxīmo ēt copiōsissīmo, nōn amplius milībus¹⁶ passuum octōdēcim āberat, rei frūmentāriae prospīciendum¹⁷ existīmavit : īter āb Helvētiis āvertit āc Bibracte¹⁸ īre contendit.

Write in Latin.

1. Since we excel the Romans in valor, it will be very easy to get possession of their government. 2. Since they fight more bravely than the Gauls¹⁹ they will easily conquer. 3. We are fleeing, since we cannot longer withstand their attacks. 4. Since they cannot longer withstand the attack of the enemy, one party withdraws upon a mountain, the other betakes itself to the baggage. 5. He complained because (as he said) he could not use the corn. 6. He complains because (as he says) he has sold his house at a small price.²⁰ 7. Because Germany is placed towards the north the cold there is great. 8. We shall march through Geneva at sunset,²¹ because we are not more than twenty miles distant.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 124.² See 104.³ See 129.⁴ magna ex parte, in great part.⁵ See 79.⁶ Diutius modifies sustinēre.⁷ The Possessive Pronouns, like the Demonstrative, are often used substantively. See LN. LVIII., NOTES 1 and 13.⁸ What kind of a verb is coepērant? (127)⁹ See EXAMPLE 2.¹⁰ See 144.

¹¹ Of what does *quōd* — *pōsita est* express the cause?

¹² See 115 and 34.

¹³ See 54.

¹⁴ See 69.

¹⁵ See 125.

¹⁶ See 133.

¹⁷ See EXAMPLE 4.

¹⁸ See 105.

¹⁹ *Than the Gauls, quam Galli.*

²⁰ See 146.

²¹ See 111.



LESSON LXXXII.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

150. A. & G. 323; 325; 327; 328: A. & S. 263, 3—REM. 2: B. 292, d, 1—3, RULE LVI.; 304, 1—3, RULE LXV.: B. & M. 1237; 1238; 1241; 1244: G. 570; 571; 574; 576; 579; 580; 581: H. 519, I., II., 1, 2; 520, I., 1, 2, II.; 521, I., II., 1, 2: C. 214, 1, 2, 4, 5.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Quōm lēgātī mittērentur, Ariovistus postulāvit, when ambassadors were sent, Ariovistus demanded.*
2. *Priusquā quidquā cōnārētur Divitiācum vōcat,¹ before he attempted anything he summoned Divitiacus.*
3. *Dūm haec gēruntur Caesāri nunciātum est, while these things were taking place it was reported to Caesar.*
4. *Nōn expectandum sibi stātuit dūm pervēnīrent, he decided that he ought not to wait until they should arrive.*

Analyze and parse.

1. *Diū quōm esset pugnātum, impēdimentis castrisque² nostri³ pōtīti sunt.* 2. *Quōm trīdūi viam⁴ prōcessisset, nunciātum est⁵ ei Ariovistum cū suis omnībus cōpiis contendēre.* 3. *Hic pāgus ūnus, quōm dōmo⁶ exisset patrum nostrōrum mēmōriā,⁷ Lucium Cassium consulem interfēcērat ēt ejus exercitum sūb jūgum mīsērat.* 4. *Quōm²⁰ hostium ācies ā sīnis-tro cornu⁸ pulsā⁹ atquē īn fūgam conversa esset, ā dextro*

cornu vēhementēr multītūdīne suōrum³ nostram āciem prēmēbant. 5. Itāquē priusquam quidquām cōnārētur Divitiācum ād sē vōcārī jūbet.¹ 6. Postquām īd ānīmum advertit cōpiās suas Caesar īn proxīmum collem subdūcit. 7. Eō postquām Caesar pervēnit obsīdes, arma, servos¹⁰ pōposcit. 8. Dūm haec īn collōquio gēruntur,¹¹ Caesāri nunciātum est⁵ ēquītes Ariovisti lāpīdes telāquē¹² īn nostros conjicere. 9. Tāmēn, ūt spātium intercēdere posset, dūm milītes, quos¹³ impērāverat, convēnīrent, lēgātis respondit diem sē ād dēlibērandum¹⁴ sumptūrum.¹⁵ 10. Quībus¹⁶ rēbus adductus Caesar nōn expectandum¹⁷ sibi stātuit, dūm, omnībus fortūnis¹⁸ sociōrum consumptis, īn Santōnos Helvētii pervēnīrent.

Write in Latin.

1. When ambassadors were sent to Caesar, he demanded corn of them.¹⁹ 2. When they had proceeded a three days' march,⁴ they pitched (their) camp. 3. Before they attempted to set out they summoned a council. 4. After the general arrived in the territory of the Aedui he demanded corn, wagons, and¹⁰ horses. 5. Although we had routed the enemy's line on the right wing, on the left he was pressing furiously upon us. 6. While the troops are assembling we are waiting. 7. We shall remain in the city until the troops assemble. 8. Influenced by these¹⁶ affairs, we decided that we ought¹⁷ not to wait until the enemy should lay waste our fields.

Notes.

¹ See A. & G. 276, d: A. & S. 145, I., 3: B. 58: B. & M. 1082: G. 220: H. 467, III: C. 189, 6.

² See LN. XXIII., NOTE 2.

³ See LN. LXXXI., NOTE 7.

⁴ See 109.

⁵ What is the subject of *nunciātum est*? (129)

⁶ See 107.

⁷ See 111.

⁸ a sinistro cornu, on the left wing. ⁹ pulsa, sc. esset.

¹⁰ When several nouns follow each other in the same construction, the Latin language either omits the conjunction altogether, or repeats it : e. g. either *obsides, arma, servos* ; or *obsides et arma et servos* ; NOT *obsides, arma et servos*.

¹¹ A. & G. 276, c: A. & S. 259, (1.), (c.): G. 220, REMARK : H. 467, 4: C. 214, 1, note 2.

¹² An enclitic throws its accent back upon the final syllable of the word to which it is attached : *télâque*.

¹³ Sc. *convenire*.

¹⁴ *ad delibërandum, for deliberating.*

¹⁵ *sumptûrum, sc. essë.*

¹⁶ The Latin often employs a relative where the English prefers a demonstrative : *quæ res, THESE affairs.*

¹⁷ *expectandum, sc. essë.* See 130 and 131

¹⁸ See 122.

¹⁹ See 71 and LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

²⁰ See 145.



LESSON LXXXIII.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

151. The Indirect Question. A. & G. 334, w. preceding NOTE: A. & S. 265 and NOTE 2: B. 294, a, RULE LVII.: B. & M. 1182: G. 454; 469: H. 528, 2 NOTE; 529, I.: C. 231, 1 w. n. 1.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Quid sui consili¹ sit ostendit, he shows what his plan is.*
2. *Causa quæ esset quaesit, he asked what the cause was.*
3. *Ariovisto mirum visum est quid in Gallia Caesari negōti¹ esset, Ariovistus wondered what business Caesar had in Gaul.*

Analyze and parse.

1. *Quâlis esset nātūra montis, qui² cognoscērent,³ mīsit.*
2. *Dicit intelligēre sēsē quanto id cūm pēricūlo fēcērit.*
3. *Ex quo jūdīcārī pōtest,⁴ quantum hābeat in sē bōni¹ constantia.*
4. *Dumnōrīgi custōdes pōnit,⁵ ūt, quæ āgat, quībus-cūm⁶ lōquātur, scīre possit.*
5. *Ariovistus dixit sibi mīrum vīdēri,⁷ quid in sua Gallia, quā bello⁸ vicisset,⁹ aut Caesari¹⁰*

aut omnino pōpulo Rōmāno¹⁰ nēgōti¹ esset. 6. Flūmen est Arar, quod pēr fines Aeduōrum ēt Sēquānōrum īn Rhōdānum influit incrēdībīli lēnītāte, ītā ūt oculīs, īn utram partem¹¹ fluat, jūdīcārī nōn possit. 7. Postero die castra ex eo lōco mōvent. Idēm¹² fācit Caesar, ēquītātumquē omnem, ād nūmērū quat-tuor milium, quem ex omni prōvincia ēt Aeduis atquē eōrum sōciis coactum hābēbat,¹³ praemittit, qui vīdeant,⁸ quas īn partes hostes īter fāciant. 8. Caesar vēhēmētēr eos incūsāvit quod, aut quām īn partem aut quo consīlio¹⁴ dūcērentur,¹⁵ sibi quaerendum¹⁶ aut cōgītandum pūtārent.¹⁷ 9. Caesar dixit dē quarta vīgīlia sē castra mōtūrū, ūt quām prīmū intellīgēre posset, utrūm āpūd eos pūdor atquē offīcium, ān tīmor vālēret. 10. Quūm ex captīvis quaerēret Caesar, quām ōb rem Ariovistus proelio⁸ nōn dēcertāret, hanc rēpēriēbat cau-sam.

Write in Latin.

1. Caesar asked in what direction the river flowed. 2. We shall send (men) to ascertain⁸ in what direction the river flows. 3. It cannot be determined in what direction the river flows. 4. Labienus sent forward the cavalry to see in what direction the enemy had fled. 5. Liscus censures them severely because (as he says) they think¹⁷ they ought to ask¹⁶ in what direction they are to be led. 6. We shall break up camp in the first watch, that we may be able to know as soon as possible whether our soldiers are brave or cowardly. 7. We shall place guards over him,⁵ that we may know with⁶ whom he speaks. 8. The general placed guards over the soldiers, that he might be able to ascertain what they were doing.

Notes and Questions.

¹ *quid sui consilii*, what his plan ; lit., what of his plan. See A. & G. 216 : A. & S. 212 : B. 227, RULE XVII. : B. & M. 77 : G. 366 ; 371 : H. 396, IV. : C. 133, 4.

² *qui*, sc. *vīros* as antecedent.

³ See 136 and Ex. 10.

⁴ What is the subject of *pōtest*?

⁵ *Dumnōrigi* — *pōnit*, *he places guards over* (lit. for) *Dumnorix*.

⁶ See LN. LIX., NOTE 1.

⁷ *sibi* — *vidēri*, *he wondered*; lit., *it seemed to him wonderful*; for *sibi*, see 39.

⁸ *bello*, in war; see 54.

⁹ *vicisset*, translate by the Indicative.

¹⁰ See 137.

¹¹ in *utram partem*, in which direction.

¹² How does *idem* differ in meaning from *idem*?

¹³ *coactum hābēbat*, *he had collected*. A. & G. 292, c: A. & S. 274, REM. 4: B. & M. 1358: G. 230: H. 388, 1, NOTE: C. 251, 3.

¹⁴ See 79.

¹⁵ *ducērentur*, *they were to be led*.

¹⁶ *quaerendum*, sc. *essē*: see 130.

¹⁷ See 149 and Ex. 3.



LESSON LXXXIV.

ORATIO OBLIQUA. — INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

152. A. & G. 335, REM.; 336; 339: A. & S. 266, NOTE, and 2: B. 316; 317, RULE LXXIV.: B. & M. 1295; 1296: G. 651 — 653: H. 522; 523, I., II., 1, 2, III.; 524: C. 228; 229.

EXAMPLE.

Orātiō Recta, Direct Dis-
course.

Ob eam
rem ex cīvitatē prōfūgti ēt
Rōmam vēnt, quōd nēquē
jūrejūrando nēquē obsīdibus
tēnēbar.

I fled from
the state and came to Rome for
this reason, because *I* was re-
strained neither by an oath nor
by hostages.

Orātiō Obliqua, Indirect Dis-
course.

Lōcūtus est Divitiācus: ōb eam
rem sē ex cīvitatē prōfūgtisse ēt
Rōmam vēnissee, quōd nēquē
jūrejūrando nēquē obsīdibus
tēnērētur.

Divitiacus said: *he* fled from
the state and came to Rome for
this reason, because *he* was re-
strained neither by an oath nor
by hostages.

Analyze and parse.

1. Divīco respondit: Itā Helvētios ā mājōrībūs suis instītūtōs esse, ūtī obsīdes accēpēre,¹ nōn dāre consuērint²; ējus rei pōpūlum Rōmānum essē testem. 2. Lēgātī dixērunt sēsē hābēre quasdam res, quas ex commūni consensu āb eo pētēre vellent. 3. Lōcūtus est prō his Divitiācus Aeduus: Galliae tōtīus factiōnes essē duas: hārum³ altērius⁴ princēpātum tēnēre Aeduos, altērius Arvernos. 4. Dixit hōrum⁵ prīmo circītēr milia quindēcīm Rhēnum transisse: posteāquām agros ēt cultum ēt cōpias⁶ Gallōrum hōmīnes fēri āc barbāri ādāmasent, trāductos⁷ plūres:¹¹ nunc essē īn Gallia ād centūm ēt vīgintī milium nūmērū. 5. Dixit cūm his Aeduos eōrumquē clientes sēmēl atquē ītērūm armis⁸ contendisse; magnam cālāmītātem pulsos⁹ accēpisse, omnem nobīlītātem, omnem sēnātum, omnem ēquītātū⁹ āmīsisse. 6. Anīmadvertit Caesar ūnos ex omnībūs Sēquānos nīhīl eārum rērū⁸ fācēre, quas cētēri fācērent, sēd tristes cāpīte¹⁰ dēmisso terram intūēri.

Notes.

¹ See 69.² See 139 and LN. LXXV., NOTE 11.³ See LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1.⁴ *altērius* modifies *factiōnis* understood.⁵ *cōpias*, *wealth*.⁶ *trāductos*, sc. *essē*.⁷ See 54.⁸ See *pello*.⁹ See LN. LXXXII., NOTE 10.¹⁰ See 122.¹¹ *plus* is declined as follows:

	N.	M. and F.	N.
SING.	<i>Nom.</i> plūs,	PLUR.	plūra,
	<i>Gen.</i> plūris,		plūrium,
	<i>Dat.</i> ———		plūrībus,
	<i>Acc.</i> plūs,		plūra,
	<i>Abl.</i> ———		plūrībus.

LESSON LXXXV.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (*continued*).

EXAMPLE.

Direct Discourse.

Sī pācem pōpulus Rōmānus cūm Helvētiis **fāciet**, in eam partem **ibunt** atque ibi **erunt** Helvētiī, ūbi eos **tu** constitū**eris** atque esse vōlū**eris**; sīn bello persēqui persēvērā**bis**, rē-mīnisc**ere** ēt vētēris incom-mōdi pōpūli Rōmāni ēt pristīnae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.

If the Roman people **shall** make peace with the Helvetii, the Helvetii **will** go into that part and stay where **you shall** have determined and wished that they should be; but if **you shall** persist in continuing war, recollect the old misfortune of the Roman people and former valor of the Helvetii.

Indirect Discourse.

Is **illā** cūm *Caesāre* **ēgit**: **Sī** pācem pōpulus Rōmānus cūm Helvētiis **fācēret**, in eam partem **itūros** atque ibi **fūturos** Helvētios, ūbi eos *Caesar* constitū**isset** atque esse vōlū**isset**; sīn bello persēqui persēvērā**ret**, rē-mīnisc**erētur** ēt vētēris incom-mōdi pōpūli Rōmāni ēt pristīnae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.

He treated with Caesar as follows: If the Roman people **should** make peace with the Helvetii, the Helvetii **would** go into that part and stay where *Caesar should* have determined and wished that they should be; but if **he should** persist in continuing war, **let him** recollect the old misfortune of the Roman people and former valor of the Helvetii.

Analyze and parse.

1. Ariovistus multa¹ praedicāvit: Transisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte,² sēd rōgātum³ ēt arcessitum³ ā Gallis; nōn sīnē magna spe magnisquē praemiis dōmum prōpinquosquē rēliquisse: sēdes hābēre⁴ in Gallia āb ipsis⁵ concessas,⁶ obsīdes ipsōrum⁶ vōluntāte² dātos; stipendium cāpere⁴ jūre⁷ belli,

quod⁸ victōres victis⁹ impōnere consuērint.¹⁰ 2. His Caesar itā respondit: Eo¹¹ sibi mīnūs dūbītātōnis¹² dāri, quōd eas res, quas lēgāti Helvētīi commēmōrassent,¹⁰ mēmōriā²¹ tēnēret, atquē eo¹³ grāvius ferre, quo¹³ mīnūs mērīto⁷ pōpūli Rōmāni accīdissent: qui si¹⁴ alicūjus injūriæ¹⁵ sibi¹⁶ conscius fuisset, nōn fuisse diffīcile cāvēre¹⁷; sed eo¹¹ dēceptum,¹⁸ quod nēque commissum¹⁹ a se intelligēret, quāre tīmēret, nēque sīne causa tīmendum²⁰ pūtāret.

Notes.

¹ A. & G. 188: A. & S. 205, REM. 7, (2): B. 269: B. & M. 658: G. 195, REMARK 2: H. 441: C. 113, 7.

² See 79.

³ See 121 and Exs. 3 and 4.

⁴ hābere, capere, sc. sē.

⁵ ipsis, sc. Gallis.

⁶ concessas, from concēdo; ipsōrum, their own.

⁷ The Ablative of Cause often designates that in accordance with which anything is done: jure, in accordance with the law.

⁸ See 115.

⁹ A. & G. 188: A. & S. 205, REM. 7: B. 269: B. & M. 658: G. 195, REMARK 1: H. 441, 1; this rule includes Participles and Pronouns: C. 251, 8. For the case of victis, see 67.

¹⁰ See LN. LXXV., NOTE 11.

¹¹ eo, for this reason.

¹² See LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1.

¹³ See GEN. VY. under eo.

¹⁴ qui si, if they.

¹⁵ See 140.

¹⁶ See 86; translate, on their part.

¹⁷ See 129.

¹⁸ dēceptum, sc. essē sē.

¹⁹ commissum, sc. essē aliquid.

²⁰ tīmendum, sc. sibi essē, and see 130.

²¹ See 54.

LESSON LXXXVI.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (*continued*).

Write in Latin.

1. Caesar replies: The Romans have been so trained up by their fathers that they do not give¹ hostages. 2. He in-

forms Caesar (that) the Helvetii are marching through the province because they have no other way. 3. He says (that) the Aquitani are hemmed in by the Pyrenees, which separate Aquitania from Spain. 4. We shall say many² (things) : (that) we did not cross the Rhone of our own free will, but because³ we had been invited³ by the Sequani ; we did not set out from home⁴ without great rewards ; we have among the Helvētīi large possessions, granted to us with their own⁵ consent ;⁶ we levied tribute on the conquered⁷ in accordance with the law⁸ of war. 5. You said (that) you remembered those things which the Sequani had called to mind ; that you had been deceived for this reason,⁹ that¹⁰ you had neither done anything for which¹¹ you should fear, nor did you think (that) you ought to fear¹² without a reason.

Notes.

¹ See 139.² See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.³ See 121 and Ex. 3.⁴ See 107.⁵ *their own, ipsōrum.*⁶ See 79.⁷ See 67 and LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9.⁸ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 7.⁹ *for this reason, eo.*¹⁰ *that, quōd.*¹¹ *for which, quārē.*¹² See 130 and 131.

LESSON LXXXVII.

THE GERUND.

153. *The Gerund.* A. & G. 295 : A. & S. 275, I. : B. 324 : B. & M. 1319 ; 1321 : G. 426 ; 427 : H. 541 ; 542, I. - IV. : C. 252.

EXAMPLES.

1. Hostībus pugnandī pōtestātem fēcīt, *he gave the enemy an opportunity FOR FIGHTING.*

2. **Bellandi cūpīdi**, *fond* OF CARRYING ON WAR.
3. **Diem ād dēlibērandum sūmet**, *he will take a day for* DELIBERATING.
4. **Rēpēriēbat īn quaerendo**, *he found on* INQUIRING.
5. **Stūdium pugnandi**, *a desire* FOR FIGHTING.

Analyze and parse.¹

- 1. Qua dē causa hōmīnes bellandi² cūpīdi magno dōlōre³ afficiēbantur. 2. His rēbus adducti ēt auctōritāte Orgētōrigis permōti, constituērunt ea, quae ād prōficiendum pertīnērent,⁴ comparāre. — 3. Caesar lēgātis respondit, diem sē ād dēlibērandum sumptūrum.⁵ 4. Rēpēriēbat īn quaerendo Caesar īnitium ējus fūgae factum⁵ ā Dumnōrige atquē ējus ēquitibus. — 5. Caesar Divitiācum consōlātus rōgat, finem ōrandi fāciat.⁶ 6. Ariovistus, quūm nēquē ādītum nēquē causam postulandi justam hābēret,⁷ libērālītate⁸ sēnātus ea praemia consēcūtus est. — 7. Caesar lōquendi finem fācit sēquē ād suos⁹ rēcīpit, suisquē impērāvit nē quod¹⁰ omnīno tēlum īn hostes rējicērent. 8. Multo¹¹ māior ālacritas stūdiumquē pugnandi māius exercītui injectum est. — 9. Proxīmo die Caesar āciem instruxit hostibusquē¹² pugnandi pōtestātem fēcit.¹³ 10. Itā nostri⁹ acritēr īn hostes signo¹⁴ dāto impētum fēcērunt, ūt spātium pila īn hostes conjiēiendi nōn dārētur.¹⁵

Write in Latin.

1. He says the Romans were fond of carrying on war.
2. We shall take ten days for deliberating. / 3. We shall ask them to make⁶ an end of entreating. 4. A much greater desire for carrying on war was infused into all of us.¹⁶ / 5. They gave us an opportunity for strengthening peace with them.
6. We shall give them an opportunity for strengthening peace and friendship with us. / 7. You will find on inquiring (that) we do not easily keep the enemy from our towns. 8. They

said you would find on inquiring (that) they do not easily keep the enemy from their cities. —9. We made an end of speaking and betook ourselves to our (friends). 10. Although we had no just cause for asking, we obtained many things¹⁷ by reason of your generosity.⁸

Notes.

¹ Parse the Gerunds like nouns. ² See 140.

³ A. & G. 248, R. : A. & S. 247, 2 : B. 259, RULE XLIV. : B. & M. 373 : G. 401 : H. 419, III. : C. 166, 1.

⁴ A. & G. 320 : A. & S. 264, 1, (a.) : B. 301 : B. & M. 1218 : G. 633 : H. 500, I. : C. 223, 1.

⁵ *essē* is often omitted from the compound forms of the Infinitive.

⁶ See 136 and LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3 ; *ūt*, as here, is sometimes omitted.

⁷ See 145.

⁸ See 79.

⁹ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9.

¹⁰ See 116, second part.

¹¹ See 144.

¹² See 39.

¹³ See EXAMPLE 1.

¹⁴ See 122 and Ex. 2, b.

¹⁵ See 139.

¹⁶ *all of us, omnibus nobis* ; see 67.

¹⁷ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.



LESSON LXXXVIII.

THE GERUNDIVE.

154. *The Gerundive.* A. & G. 296 : A. & S. 275, II. : B. 325, RULE LXXVI. : B. & M. 1322 : G. 428 : H. 543 : C. 252.

EXAMPLES.

1. Ad mīnuendam grātiām, for DIMINISHING popularity.
2. Ad eas res conficiendas Orgētōrix dēligitur, *Orgetorix is chosen to EXECUTE these plans.*
3. Spem regni obtinendi, the hope OF OBTAINING the sovereignty.
4. Dātā facultāte itinēris faciendi, if an opportunity for marching should be granted.

Analyse, and parse.

1. Quibus opibus¹ ac nervis non solum ad minuendam² gratiam,³ sed paene ad perniciem suam uteretur.⁴ 2. Ipse in ceteriorem Galliam ad conventus agendos profectus est.—3. Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt. 4. In Gallia ab his, qui ad conducendos homines facultates habebant, regna occupabantur.—5. Ea, quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent, important. 6. Decima legio se esse ad bellum gerendum paratissimam confirmavit.—7. Ariovistus dixit omnes Galliae civitates ad se oppugnandum venire. 8. Frumentum omne, praeterquam quod secum portaturi erant,⁵ comburunt, ut domum⁶ reditionis spe⁷ sublata⁸ paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda essent.—9. Liscus dicit si quid accidat⁹ Romanis, summam in spem¹⁰ per Helvetios regni obtinendi Dumnorigem venire. 10. Hac oratione habita¹¹ summa alacritas et cupiditas belli gerendi innata est.—11. Neque homines inimico animo,¹² data facultate per provinciam itineris faciendi, temperaturos¹³ ab injuria et maleficio existimavit. 12. Hoc proelio facto reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut consequi posset,¹⁴ pontem in Arare faciendum curat¹⁵ atque ita exercitum traducit.

Write in Latin.

1. We consider two days sufficient for collecting the men. 2. They thought five days were sufficient for destroying the city.—3. We entertain¹⁰ the highest hope of establishing friendship with all. 4. He says he entertains the highest hope of establishing friendship with the Gauls if anything happens⁹ to us.—5. An opportunity for marching through entire Gaul was granted the Romans. 6. A very great desire for obtaining the sovereignty was infused into Dumnorix. 7. Let us not import¹⁶ those things which tend to enervate the mind. 8. Let us do that which tends to strengthen peace

with all men. 9. Caesar said that entire Germany had come to attack him. 10. We shall burn up our villages, that we may be more ready to endure all perils.

Notes.

¹ See 104.

² Translate the Gerundives like Gerunds (see Ex. 1); parse them like adjectives.

³ *gratiam*, sc. *suam*.

⁴ *utāretur*, translate by the Indicative.

⁵ See LN. LXX., Ex. 2.

⁶ See 105; *dōmum* limits the idea of *motion* in the verbal noun *rēditionis*.

⁷ See 122.

⁸ From *tollo*.

⁹ *accidat*, translate by the Indicative; why is it in the Subjunctive? (152)

¹⁰ *in spem vēnio*, *I entertain the hope*.

¹¹ See LN. LXIV., NOTE 2.

¹² See 144, a.

¹³ See LN. LXXXVII., NOTE 5.

¹⁴ See 136.

¹⁵ *pontem* — *curat*, *he attends to building a bridge over the Saône*; lit., *he cares for a bridge to be built*, etc. How is *Saône* pronounced?

¹⁶ See 134.



LESSON LXXXIX.

THE SUPINE.

155. The Supine. A. & G. 302; 303: A. & S. 276, I.—III.: B. 326, RULES LXXVII. and LXXVIII.: B. & M. 1360; 1365: G. 435—437: H. 546—547: C. 253; 254.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Lēgātos mittunt rōgātūm auxilium*, *they send legates TO ASK FOR aid*.
2. *Perfācile factū*, *very easy TO DO*.

Analyze and parse.

1. Aedui, quūm sē suāquē¹ āb iis dēfēndēre nōn possent,² lēgātos ād Caesārem mittunt rōgātūm auxīlium. 2. Bello Helvētiōrum confecto tōtius fērē Galliae lēgāti, princīpes³ cīvītātum, ād Caesārem grātūlātūm convēnērunt. 3. Lēgāti āb Aeduis ēt ā Trēvīris vēniēbant; Aedui⁴ questūm quōd Harūdes, qui nūpēr īn Galliam transportāti essent,⁵ fines eōrum pōpūlārentur²; sēsē nē obsīdībūs quīdēm dātis pācem Ariovisti rēdīmēre pōtuisse. 4. Divitiācus dixit ōb eam rem sē ex cīvītate prōfūgisse ēt Rōmam⁶ ād sēnātum vēnisse auxīlium postulātūm, quōd sōlus nēquē jūrejūrando nēquē obsīdībūs tēnērētur. 5. Liscus dīcit Dumnōrīgē ipsum ex Helvētiis uxōrem hābēre, sōrōrem ex matre⁷ ēt prōpinquas suas nuptūm īn ālias cīvītates collōcasse. 6. Hostis⁸ est uxor invīta⁹ quae ād vīrum nuptūm dātur. 7. Perfācīle factū essē illis prōbat cōnāta perfīcēre, proptēreā quōd ipse suae cīvītātis impērium obtentūrus esset.¹⁰

Write in Latin.

1. We have sent legates to the general to ask for troops. 2. We shall send a legate to you to ask for aid. 3. Since we cannot² defend ourselves and our possessions¹¹ from the enemy, we shall send legates to Geneva⁶ to ask for aid. 4. We shall go to the consuls to congratulate (them). 5. Let us go to the praetor to congratulate (him). 6. Ambassadors came from all the states; the Gauls to complain because the Germans had crossed² the Rhine to attack¹² their towns; (saying that) not even after a pledge¹³ had been given were they able to establish peace. 7. You are attempting that which is not very easy to do. 8. He shows (that) to march through the enemy's territory is (a thing) not easy to do.

Notes.

¹ See A. & G. 19, c: A. & S. 15, 2: B. 24, Exc. 3: B. & M. 21: G. 14, REMARK 1: H. 18, 2, 1): C. 11.

² See 149.

³ See 25.

⁴ *Aedui*, sc. *vēniēbant*.

⁵ See A. & G. 342: A. & S. 266: B. 310, RULE LXIX.: B. & M. 1991: G. 666: H. 529, II.: C. 226.

⁶ See 105.

⁷ *sōrōrem ex matre*, *his half-sister*. ⁸ See 64.

⁹ *invita*, *against her will*; it modifies *quae*.

¹⁰ See LN. LXX. and 149.

¹¹ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.

¹² See 155.

¹³ See 122.

LESSON XC.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR. — ABBREVIATIONS.

156. The Calendar. A. & G. NOTE, 376, *a-d*: A. & S. 326, (1.) – (6.): B. 374, *a-c*: B. & M. 1524 – 1537: G. APPENDIX, page 387: H. 641 – 645: C. 313.

157. Abbreviations. A. & G. 80, *a-d*: A. & S. 328: B. 373: B. & M. 1538 – 1542: H. 649 – 650: C. 317, 1.

VOCABULARY.

Jānuāriūs, ā, ūm, (Jān.)	<i>of January.</i>
Februāriūs, ā, ūm, (Febr.)	<i>of February.</i>
Martiūs, ā, ūm, (Mart.)	<i>of March.</i>
Aprīlis, ě, (Apr.)	<i>of April.</i>
Māiūs, ā, ūm, (Māi.)	<i>of May.</i>
Jūniūs, ā, ūm, (Jūn.)	<i>of June.</i>
Quintīlis, ě, (Quint.)	<i>of July.</i>
Sextīlis, ě, (Sext.)	<i>of August.</i>
Septembĕr, brīs, brĕ, (Sept.)	<i>of September.</i>
Octōbĕr, brīs, brĕ, (Oct.)	<i>of October.</i>
Nōvembĕr, brīs, brĕ, (Nōv.)	<i>of November.</i>
Dĕcembĕr, brīs, brĕ, (Dĕc.)	<i>of December.</i>

Kālendae, ārūm, (Kāl.) f. pl.,	<i>Calends</i> ; the first day of the Roman month.
Nōnae, ārūm, (Nōn.) f. pl.	<i>Nones</i> ; the 7th of March, May, July, and October, and the 5th of the other months.
Idūs, uūm, (Id.) f. pl.,	<i>Ides</i> ; the 15th of March, May, July, and October, and the 13th of the other months.
prīdiē, (pr. or prīd.) adv.,	<i>the day before.</i>

Pronounce the abbreviated words as if they were printed in full.

1. Gēnāvam Kālendis¹ ipsis Nōvembris² occūpābit.
 2. Qui dies ērit a. d. VI. Kāl. Nōv.³ (antē diem sextum Kālendās Nōvembris). 3. C.⁴ Jūlius Caesar Idibus Martiis occisus est. 4. M. Tullius Cicerō a. d. III. Nōn. Jān. nātus est. 5. P. Scīpio a. d. XVII. Kāl. Māi. mortuus est. 6. Ap. Claudius a. d. II. Nōn. Apr. īn sēnātu lēcūtus est. 7. Tī. Gracchus Nōnis Jūniis Rōmā⁵ prōfectus est. 8. M. Mānilius ād Rōmam prōfectus est a. d. VI. Id. Sext. 9. Multa verba ōrātōres faciunt a. d. IV. Nōn. Quint. 10. C. Caesar prīd. Nōn.⁶ Febr. castra mōvit. 11. Dixi ēgo īn sēnātu caedem tē contūlissee⁷ princīpum īn a. d. V. Kāl. Nōv. 12. Caedem princīpum contūlisti ex a. d. V. Kāl. Dēc. ād pr. Kāl.⁶ Jān. 13. T. Labiēnus prīd. Id.⁶ Sept. hostes sūpērāvit. 14. Is dies ērat a. d. V. Kāl. Apr. L. Pīsōne A. Gābīnio consūlīb.⁸ 15. Sī quid vellent, ād Id. Apr. rēvertērentur. 16. Hōrum est nēmo qui nesciat⁹ tē prīd. Kāl.⁶ Jān. stētisse īn cōmītio cūm tēlo.

Imitate in Abbreviations the preceding Latin exercises.

1. Caius Cassius was born on the 31st of October. 2. Marcus Flaccus died on the 4th of May. 3. Caius Gracchus was killed on the 25th of January. 4. Titus Labienus set out from Geneva on the 15th of July. 5. Tiberius Gracchus will

break up camp on the 12th of February. 6. Lucius Piso was elected on the 1st of December. 7. That day was the 16th of April, when Lucius Cassius and Appius Claudius were consuls.⁸ 8. If you wish anything, return on the 13th of June. 9. He put off the murder of the consuls to the 30th of November. 10. There was no one of these who did not know⁹ that you stood in the Comitium on the 20th of August.

Notes.

¹ See 111.² The Latin names of months are adjectives.³ Such an expression as *antē diem sextum Kāendas Nōvembres* is treated as a *single word*; hence it is often used like an Ablative of Time, as in sentence 4; like a Predicate Substantive, as in sentence 2; or it is governed by the prepositions *in*, *ex*, and rarely by *ad*, as in sentences 11 and 12.⁴ *Caius*: Latin pronunciation, *Kāh-yoos*; English pronunciation, *Kā-yus*.⁵ See 107.⁶ See A. & G. 261, a: A. & S. 238, 1 (b.): B. & M. 1010: H. 437, 1: C. 313, 3, at end.⁷ From *confēro*.⁸ See 122.⁹ A. & G. 320: A. & S. 264, 7: B. 301, 5: B. & M. 1218: G. 634: H. 503, 1: C. 223, 3.

LESSON XCI.

GENERAL EXERCISE.

EXAMPLES.

1. *prīma lūce*, at daybreak, at earliest dawn.
2. *multo die*, late in the day.
3. *prīma nocte*, in the first part of the night.
4. *ad multam noctem*, till late at night.
5. *prīdiē ejūs diēi*, on the day before.
6. *postridiē ejūs diēi*, on the following day.

Translate and parse.

1. Prīma lūce,¹ quūm summus mons ā T. Lābiēno tēnērē-tur,² ipse āb hostium castris nōn longius mille ēt quingentis passibus³ abesset, Considius ēquo⁴ admissō ād eum accurrit, dīcit montem, quem ā Lābiēno occūpāri vōlūērit,⁵ āb hostibus tēnēri. 2. Multo dēnīquē die pēr explōrātōres Caesar cog-nōvit ēt montem ā suis tēnēri ēt Helvētios castra mōvisse ēt Considium tīmōre perterrītum, quōd nōn vīdisset, prō vīso sibi rēnunciassē.⁶ 3. Cīrcītēr hōmīnum⁷ milia sex prīma nocte ē castris Helvētiōrum ēgressi ād Rhēnum finesquē Germānōrum contendērunt. 4. Ad multam noctēm ētiām ād impēdīmenta pugnātum est, proptēreā quōd prō vallo carros objēcērānt. 5. Collōquendi⁸ Caesāri causā vīsa nōn est, ēt eo⁹ māgīs, quōd prīdiē ejus diēi¹⁰ Germāni rētīnēri nōn pōtērānt, quīn¹¹ īn nostros tēla conjicērent.¹¹ 6. Postrīdiē ejus diēi¹⁰ praetēr castra Caesāris suas cōpias trādūxit ēt milibus¹² passuum duō-bus ultrā eum castra fēcīt. 7. Postrīdiē ejus diēi Caesar praesīdium utrisque castris, quōd sātīs essē vīsum est, rēli-quit.

Write in Latin.

1. The cavalry hastened to the city at full speed,¹³ and pitched their camp at daybreak not farther than nine miles from ours. 2. We ascertained late in the day that the top of the mountain was held by the Sequani. 3. We set out on the day before at earliest dawn, hastened at full speed, and arrived at sunset in the vicinity of Geneva. 4. They set out in the first part of the night and arrived in the territory of the Gauls on the following day at earliest dawn. 5. We stayed at home on the fourth of July till late at night. 6. The reason for holding a conference⁸ does not seem good to us, and the more⁹ because the Romans cannot be restrained from hurling¹¹ missiles upon our men. 7. We shall leave for both camps a garrison which will seem to be sufficient.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ What is the literal meaning of *prima luce*? Why is the Ablative used?
- ² Why is the Subjunctive used? See A. & G. 325; A. & S. 263, 5, REM. 2: B. 304, RULE LXV.: B. & M. 1244: G. 581, II.: H. 521, II., 2: C. 214, 5.
- ³ See 133.
- ⁴ See 122; what is the literal meaning of *equo admisso*?
- ⁵ What mood is *vōluerit*? Why is that mood used in this clause? See 152.
- ⁶ See LN. LXXV., NOTE 11.
- ⁷ See LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1. ⁸ See 153.
- ⁹ *eo magis*, the more; for *eo*, see 79.
- ¹⁰ See A. & G. 214, *g* on p. 148: A. & S. 212, REM. 4, NOTE 6: B. & M. 1005: H. 398, 5: C. 133, 7, 1.
- ¹¹ *quin* — *conjectant*, from *hurling*; why is the Imperfect used? See 135; why is the Subjunctive used? See A. & G. 319, *d*: A. & S. 262, REM. 10: B. 297, RULE LX.: B. & M. 1218: G. 551: H. 504: C. 211.
- ¹² See 147.
- ¹³ *at full speed*, *equis admissis*; why the Plural?



LESSON XCII.

GENERAL EXERCISE.

EXAMPLES.

1. *plūs posse, to be more powerful.*
2. *plūrimū posse, to be the most powerful, or to be very powerful.*
3. *ei grātiās agere, to thank him.*
4. *nōbis est in ānimo iter facere, we intend to march.*
5. *lātēre āperto, on the unprotected flank.*
6. *ex equis, on horseback.*
7. *mēmōriā tēnere, to remember.*
8. *maximis pōtest itinēribus, by the longest possible marches.*

Translate and parse.

1. Liscus dicit esse nonnullos, qui privātim plus¹ possint² quā ipsi magistrātus. 2. Nōn erat dubium, quā tōtius Galliae plūrimū¹ Helvētīi possent.³ 3. Dumnōrix grātiā ēt largitiōne apud Sēquānos plūrimū pōtērat. 4. Divitiācus dixit eos, qui ēt sua virtūte ēt pōpuli Rōmāni hospitio atquē amicitia plūrimū antē in Gallia pōtuisent,² coactos esse⁴ Sēquānis⁵ obsides dare. 5. Dēcīma lēgio pēr tribūnos militum ei grātiās ēgit. 6. Caesāri rēnunciātur⁶ Helvētiis⁷ esse in ānimo pēr agrum Sēquānōrum ēt Aeduōrum iter in Santōnum fines facere. 7. Helvētīi lēgātos ad eum mittunt⁸ qui dicērent⁹ sibi esse in ānimo sinē ullo mālēficiō iter pēr prōvinciam facere. 8. Pars aperto lātēre¹⁰ lēgiōnes circumvenire coepit.¹¹ 9. Capto monte¹² Boii ēt Tulingi nostros lātēre aperto aggressi circumvenire coeperunt. 10. Ariovistus, ex equis ut colloquerentur¹³ ēt praeter se dēnos ut ad colloquium adducērent,¹³ postulāvit. 11. Eōrum ūna pars, quā Gallos obtinere dictum est,¹⁴ attingit ab¹⁵ Sēquānis ēt Helvētiis flūmen Rhēnum. 12. Id¹⁶ hōc facilius eis persuāsit, quōd undique loci naturā Helvētīi continentur. 13. Mōribus¹⁷ suis Orgetōrigem ex vinculis¹⁸ causam dicere coēgērunt; damnātum¹⁹ poenam sequi oportēbat,²⁰ ut igni cremārētur. 14. Caesar, quōd mēmōriā²¹ tēnēbat²² L. Cassium consulem occisum exercitumquē ejus ab Helvētiis pulsum²³ ēt sub jugum missum,²³ concēdendum²⁴ nōn putābat. 15. Caesāri quū id²⁵ nunciātum esset,²⁶ eos pēr prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnāri,²⁷ mātūrat ab urbe proficisci ēt quā maximis pōtestatib²⁸ in Galliam ultēriōrem contendit ēt ad Gēnēvam pervēnit. 16. Itaque re¹² frumentariā quā celerime pōtuit comparātā magnis itinēribus ad Ariovistum contendit. 17. Liscus dicit Dumnōrigem complūres annos²⁸ portōria reliquaque²⁹ omnia Aeduōrum vectigālia parvo pretio redempta habere,³⁰ propterea quōd illo¹² licente contrā licēri audeat³¹ nemo.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See A. & G. 240, a: A. & S. 232, (3.): B. 222, RULE XIII.: B. & M. 728: G. 331, REMARKS 2 and 3: H. 378: C. 128, 2.

² Why is the Subjunctive used in this clause? See 152.

³ Why the Subjunctive? See LN. XCI., NOTE 11.

⁴ From *cōgo*.

⁵ See 39.

⁶ What is the subject of *rēnunciātur*? What is it that *is reported to Caesar*?

⁷ See 137; what is it that *the Helvetii intend* (have in mind) *to do*? What then is the subject of *essē*?

⁸ See LN. LXXXII., NOTE 1.

⁹ See 136 and Example 10; what question does *qui dicērent* answer?

¹⁰ *lātēre* is an Ablative of *Place*, answering the question *Where*?

¹¹ What kind of a verb is *coept*? See 127.

¹² See 122.

¹³ See 136 and Example 9.

¹⁴ What is the subject of *dictum est*?

¹⁵ *ab*, on the side of.

¹⁶ *id* — *quōd*, *he persuaded them to this the more easily, because*; lit., *he persuaded this to them*, etc.; for *hōc*, see 79.

¹⁷ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 7.

¹⁸ *ex vinculis*, in chains; what is its literal meaning?

¹⁹ *damnātum*, if condemned; see 121; it modifies *eūm* understood, the object of *sēqui*.

²⁰ What kind of a verb is *oportēbat*? See 128; what is its subject? See LN. LXIX., EXAMPLES 6 and 7.

²¹ See 54.

²² What kind of a clause is *quōd* — *tēnēbat*? See 149; what is the object of *tēnēbat*?

²³ See LN. LXXXVII., NOTE 5.

²⁴ *concedendum*, sc. *essē*; translate, *that it ought to be granted*.

²⁵ To what does *id* refer? What *had been reported* to Caesar?

²⁶ See LN. XCI., NOTE 2.

²⁷ *cōnārī* is in apposition with *id*.

²⁸ See 93.

²⁹ See LN. LXXXIX., NOTE 1.

³⁰ *rēdempta habere*, *had bought up*.

³¹ What kind of a verb is *audeat*? See A. & G. 136: A. & S. 142, 2: B. 110, a: B. & M. 312: G. 182: H. 268, 3: C. 81, 1.

SELECTIONS FOR READING.



I. FABLES.

1. The Mouse and the Kite.

Milvius laqueis irretītus muscūlum exorāvit, ut eum, corrōsis plagis, liberāret. Quo facto, milvius liberātus murem arripuit et devorāvit.

Haec fabūla ostendit, quam gratiam mali pro beneficiis reddere soleant.

2. The Kid and the Wolf.

Haedus, stans in tecto domus, lupo praetereunti maledixit. Cui lupo, *Non tu, inquit, sed tectum mihi maledicere.*

Saepe locus et tempus homīnes timīdos audāces reddit.

3. The Crane and the Peacock.

Pavo, coram grue pennas suas explicans, *Quanta est, inquit, formositas mea et tua deformitas!* At grus evölans, *Et quanta est, inquit, levitas mea et tua tarditas!*

Monet haec fabūla, ne ob aliquod bonum, quod nobis natūra tribuit, alios contemnāmus, quibus natūra alia et fortasse majōra dedit.

4. The Goat and the Wolf.

Lupus capram in alta rupe stantem conspicātus, *Cur non, inquit, relinquis nuda illa et sterilia loca, et huc descendis in herbidos campos, qui tibi laetum pabulum offērunt?* Cui respondit capra: *Mihi non est in animo dulcia tutis praepo-
nere.*

5. The Dog in the Manger.

Canis jacēbat in praesēpi bovesque latrando a pabūlo arcēbat. Cui unus boum, *Quanta ista, inquit, invidia est, quod non patēris ut eo cibo vescāmur, quem tu ipse capere nec velis nec possis!*

Haec fabūla invidiae indōlem declārat.

6. The Fox and the Lion.

Vulpes, quae nunquam leōnem vidērat, quum ei forte occurrisset, ita est perterrīta, ut paene morerētur formidīne. Eundem conspicāta itērum, timuit quidem, sed nequāquam, ut antea. Tertio illi obviam facta, ausa est etiam propius accedēre eumque allōqui.

7. The Oxen.

In eōdem prato pascebantur tres boves in maxīma concordia, et sic ab omni ferārum incursiōne tuti erant. Sed dissidio inter illos orto, singūli a feris petīti et laniāti sunt.

Fabūla docet quantum boni sit in concordia.

8. The Ass in the Lion's Skin.

Asīnus, pelle leōnis indūtus, territābat homīnes et bestias tamquam leo esset. Sed forte, dum se celerius movet, aures

eminēbant; unde agnītus in pistrīnum abductus est, ubi poenas petulantiae dedit.

Haec fabūla stolīdos notat, qui immerītis honorībus superbiunt.

9. The Golden Egg.

Mulier quaedam habēbat gallinam, quae ei quotidie ovum pariēbat aureum. Hinc suspicārī coepit, illam auri massam intus celāre, et gallinam occīdit. Sed nihil in ea repērit, nisi quod in aliis gallinis reperīri solet. Itāque dum majoribus divitiis inhiābat, etiam minōres perdīdit.

10. The Travellers and the Ass.

Duo qui unā iter faciēbant, asīnum oberrantem in solitudine conspicātī, accurrunt laeti, et uterque eum sibi vindicāre coepit, quod eum prior conspexisset. Dum vero contendunt et rixantur, nec a verberibus abstīnent, asīnus aufūgit et neuter eo potītur.

11. The Trumpeter.

Tubīcen ab hostibus captus, *Ne me, inquit, interficite; nam inermis sum, neque quidquam habeo praeter hanc tubam.* At hostes, *Propter hoc ipsum, inquit, te interimēmus, quod, quum ipse pugnandi sis imperītus, alios ad pugnam incitāre soles.*

Fabūla docet, non solum malefīcos esse puniendos sed etiam eos, qui alios ad male faciendum irriēt.

12. Sour Grapes.

Vulpes uvam in vite conspicāta ad illam subsiliit omnium virium suārum contentiōne, si eam forte attingere posset.

Tandem defatigāta ināni labōre discēdens dixit : *At nunc etiam acerbae sunt, nec eas in via repertas tollērem.*

Haec fabūla docet, multos ea contemnere, quae se assēqui posse despērent.

13. The Mice.

Mures aliquando habuērunt consilium, quomōdo sibi a fele cavērent. Multis aliis propositis, omnibus placuit ut ei tintinnabulum annecterētur; sic enim ipsos sonitu admonitos eam fugere posse. Sed quum jam inter mures quaererētur, qui feli tintinnabulum annecteret, nemo repertus est.

Fabūla docet, in suadendo plurimos esse audāces, sed in ipso pericūlo timidos.

14. The Wolf and the Crane.

In faucibus lupi os inhaeserat. Mercēde igitur condūcit gruem, qui illud extrāhat. Hoc grus longitudine colli facile effecit. Quum autem mercēdem postulāret, subridens lupus et dentibus infrendens, *Num tibi, inquit, parva merces vidētur, quod caput incolūme ex lupi faucibus extraxisti?*

II. STORIES FROM EARLY ROMAN HISTORY.

Saturn.

1. Antiquissimis temporibus Saturnus in Italiam venisse dicitur. Ibi haud procul a Janicūlo arcem condidit, eamque Saturniam appellavit. Hic Itālos primus agriculturam docuit.

Latīnus and Aenēas.

2. Postea Latīnus in illis regionibus imperāvit. Sub hoc rege Troja in Asia eversa est. Hinc Aenēas, Anchīsae filius, cum multis Trojānis, quibus ferrum Graecōrum pepercērat, aufūgit et in Italiā pervēnit. Ibi Latīnus rex ei benigne recepto filiam Laviniam in matrimonium dedit. Aenēas urbem condidit, quam in honōrem conjūgis Lavinium appellāvit.

Founding of Alba Longa by Ascanius.

3. Post Aenēae mortem Ascanius, Aenēae filius, regnum accepit. Hic sedem regni in alium locum transtūlit, urbemque condidit in monte Albāno, eamque Albam Longam nuncupavit. Eum secūtus est Silvius, qui post Aenēae mortem a Lavinia genitus erat. Ejus postēri omnes usque ad Romam conditam Albae regnavērunt.

Other Kings of Alba.

4. Unus horum regum, Romūlus Silvius, se Jove majorem esse dicēbat, et, quum tonāret, militibus imperāvit, ut clypeos hastis percutērent, dicebatque hunc sonum multo clariorem esse quam tonitru. Fulmīne ictus et in Albānum lacum praecipitātus est.

5. Silvius Procas, rex Albanōrum, duos filios reliquit Numitōrem et Amulium. Horum minor natu, Amulius, fratri optiōnem dedit, utrum regnum habēre vellet, an bona, quae pater reliquisset. Numitor paterna bona praetūlit; Amulius regnum obtinuit.

Birth of Romulus and Remus.

6. Amulius, ut regnum firmissime possidēret, Numitoris filium per insidias interēmit et filiam fratris Rheam Silviam

Vestālem virgīnem fecit. Nam his Vestae sacerdotibus non licet viro nubere. Sed haec a Marte gemīnos filios Romūlum et Remum pepērit. Hoc quum Amulius comperisset, matrem in vincūla conjēcit, puēros autem in Tibērim abjēci jussit.

7. Forte Tibēris aqua ultra ripam se effudērat, et, quum puēri in vado essent posīti, aqua refluens eos in sicco reliquit. Ad eōrum vagitum lupa accurrit, eosque uberibus suis aluit. Quod videns Faustūlus quidam, pastor illius regiōnis, puēros sustulit et uxōri Accae Laurentiae nutriendos dedit.

Foundation of Rome, B. C. 753.

8. Sic Romūlus et Remus pueritiam inter pastōres transegerunt. Quum adolevisset et forte comperissent quis ipsōrum avus, quae mater fuisset, Amulium interfecērunt et Numitōri avo regnum restituērunt. Tum urbem condidērunt in monte Aventino quam Romūlus a suo nomīne Romam vocāvit. Haec quum moenibus circumdarētur, Remus occisus est, dum fratrem irridens moenia transiliēbat.

How Romulus increased the Number of Citizens.

9. Romūlus, ut civium numērum augēret, asyllum patefēcit, ad quod multi ex civitatibus suis pulsi accurrērunt. Sed novae urbis civibus conjūges deērant. Festum itaque Neptūni et ludos instituit. Ad hos quum multi ex finitimis populis cum mulieribus et libēris venissent, Romāni inter ipsos ludos spectantes virgīnes rapuērunt.

War with the Sabines. — Tarpēia.

10. Popūli illi, quorum virgīnes raptae erant, bellum adversus raptōres suscepērunt. Quum Romae appropinquārent, forte in Tarpēiam virgīnem incidērunt, quae in arce sacra pro-

curābat. Hanc rogābant, ut viam in arcem monstrāret, eīque permisērunt, ut munus sibi poscēret. Illa petiit, ut sibi darent, quod in sinistris manibus gerērent, ānūlos aureos et armillas significans. At hostes in arcem ab ea perducti scutīs Tarpēiam obruērunt; nam et ea in sinistris manibus gerēbant.

Treaty with the Sabines.

11. Tum Romūlus cum hoste, qui montem Tarpēium tenēbat, pugnam conseruit in eo loco, ubi nunc forum Romānum est. In media caede raptae processērunt, et hinc patres hinc conjūges et socēros complectebantur, et rogābant, ut caedis finem facērent. Utrīque his precibus commōti sunt. Romūlus foedus icit et Sabīnos in urbem recēpit.

Institutions of Romulus. — His Death.

12. Postea civitātem descripsit. Centum senatōres legit eosque quum ob aetātem tum ob reverentiam iis debītā patres appellāvit. Plebem in triginta curias distribuit, easque raptarum nominibus nuncupāvit. Anno regni tricesīmo septīmo, quum exercitum lustrāret, inter tempestātem ortam repente oculis hominum subductus est. Hinc alii eum a senatoribus interfectum, alii ad deos sublātum esse existimavērunt.

Reign of Numa Pompilius, B. C. 716 - 673.

13. Post Romūli mortem unūq̄s anni interregnum fuit. Quo elapso, Numa Pompilius Curibus, urbe in agro Sabinōrum, natus rex creātus est. Hic vir bellum quidem nullum gessit; nec minus tamen civitāti profuit. Nam et leges dedit, et sacra plurīma instituit, ut popūli barbāri et bellicōsi mores molliret. Omnia autem, quae faciēbat, se nymphae Egeriae,

conjūgis suæ, jussu facere dicēbat. Morbo decessit, quadragesimo tertio impēri anno.

Reign of Tullus Hostilius, B. C. 673 – 641.

14. Numae successit Tullus Hostilius, cujus avus se in bello adversus Sabīnos fortem et strenuum virum praestitērat. Rex creātus bellum Albānis indixit, idque trigeminōrum Horatiōrum et Curiatiōrum certamīne finivit. Albam propter perfidiam Metti Fufēti diruit. Quum triginta duobus annis regnasset, fulmīne ictus cum domo sua arsit.

Reign of Ancus Marcius, B. C. 640 – 616.

15. Post hunc Ancus Marcius, Numae ex filia nepos, suscepit imperium. Hic vir aequitate et religione avo similis, Latinos bello domuit, urbem ampliavit, et nova ei moenia circumdedit. Carcerem primus aedificavit. Ad Tibēris ostia urbem condidit, Ostiamque vocavit. Vicesimo quarto anno impēri morbo obiit.

Reign of Tarquinius Priscus, B. C. 616 – 578.

16. Deinde regnum Lucius Tarquinius Priscus accēpit, Demarāti filius, qui tyrannos patriae Corinthi fugiens in Etruriam venērat. Ipse Tarquinius, qui nomen ab urbe Tarquiniis accēpit, aliquando Romam profectus erat. Advenienti aquila pileum abstulit, et, postquam alte evolaverat, reposuit. Hinc Tanāquil conjux, mulier auguriōrum perita, regnum ei portendi intellexit.

17. Quum Romae commoraretur, Anci regis familiaritatem consecutus est, qui eum filiōrum suōrum tutorem reliquit. Sed is pupillis regnum intercēpit. Senatoribus, quos Romulus creaverat, centum alios addidit, qui minōrum gentium sunt

appellāti. Plura bellā feliciter gessit, nec paucos agros hostibus ademptos urbis territorio adjunxit. Primus triumphans urbem intrāvit. Cloācas fecit; Capitolium inchoāvit. Tricesimo octāvo impēri anno per Anci filios, quibus regnum eripuērat, occisus est.

Reign of Servius Tullius, B. C. 578 – 534.

18. Post hunc Servius Tullius suscepit imperium, genitus ex nobili femina, captiva tamen et familia. Quum in domo Tarquini Prisci educaretur, flamma in ejus capite visa est. Hoc prodigio Tanquil ei summam dignitatem portendi intellexit, et conjugi persuasit, ut eum sicuti liberos suos educaret. Quum adolevisset, rex ei filiam in matrimonium dedit.

19. Quum Priscus Tarquinius occisus esset, Tanquil de superiore parte domus populum allocuta est, dicens; *regem grave quidem sed non letale vulnus accepisse; eum petere, ut populus, dum convalesceret, Servio Tullio obediret.* Sic Servius regnare coepit, sed bene imperium administravit. Montes tres urbi adjunxit. Primus omnium censum ordinavit. Sub eo Roma habuit octoginta tria milia civium Romanorum cum his, qui in agris erant.

20. Hic rex interfectus est scelere filiae Tulliae et Tarquini Superbi, filii ejus regis, cui Servius successerat. Nam ab ipso Tarquinio de gradibus curiae dejectus, quum domum fugeret, interfectus est. Tullia in forum properavit, et prima conjugem regem salutavit. Quum domum rediret, aurigam super patris corpus in via jacens carpentum agere jussit.

**Reign of Tarquinius Superbus, the last king of Rome,
B. C. 534 – 510.**

21. Tarquinius Superbus cognomen moribus meruit. Bello tamen strenuus plures finitimorum populorum vicit. Tem-

plum Jovis in Capitolio aedificāvit. Postea, dum Ardeam oppugnābat, urbem Lati, imperium perdidit. Nam quum filius ejus Lucretiae, nobilissimae femīnae, conjūgi Tarquini Collatini, vim fecisset, haec se ipsam occidit in conspectu marīti, patris, et amicōrum, postquam eos obtestāta fuērat, ut hanc injuriam ulciscerentur.

22. Hanc ob causam L. Brutus, Collatinus, aliique nonnulli in exitium regis conjurārent, populōque persuasērunt, ut ei portas urbis clauderet. Exercitus quoque, qui civitatem Ardeam cum rege oppugnābat, eum reliquit. Fugit itāque cum uxōre et libēris suis. Ita Romae septem reges regnavērunt annos ducentos quadragintā tres.

NOTES ON THE SELECTIONS FOR READING.

The References are mainly to the Sections of this Book.

I. FABLES.

1. *ut* — *liberāret*, see 136 and LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3. — *corrōsis plagis*, by gnawing the nels; see 122. — *quo*, see 122; what is its antecedent? — *ostendit*, what is its object? — *mali*, see LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9. — *soleant*, see 151 and LN. XCII., NOTE 31.

2. *lupo*, see 132. — *praetereunti* (*praeter* and *eo*), see 126; translate the Participle by a Relative Clause. — *inquit*, see A. & G. 144, *b*: A. & S. 183, 5: B. 111, *c*, 2: B. & M. 444: G. 190, 2: H. 297, II., 2: C. 86, 2. — *reddit*, see A. & G. 205, *b*: A. & S. 209, REM. 12, (2): B. 287, *a*: B. & M. 644: G. 281, EXCEPTION 2: H. 463, II., 2: C. 110, 2, *b*.

3. *explicans*, *spreading*. — *inquit*, see note on *inquit*, Fable 2. — *aliquod*, see 116, *a*. — *quod*, see 34 and 115. — *contemnāmus*, see 136. — *alia, majōra*, see LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.

4. *laetum*, *abundant*. — *mihi*, see 137. — *est*, what is its subject? — *dulcia*, see LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1. — *tutis*, see 67.

5. *boves*, see A. & G. 61, page 25, *bōs*: A. & S. 83, II., REMARK 1; 84, Exc. 1: B. 138: B. & M. 123: G. 80: H. 66: C. 31. — *latrando*,

see 153 and 54. — *quod* — *patēris*, see 149. — *cibo*, see 54 and 104. — *velis*, see 125 and LN. LXXXIX., NOTE 5.

6. *occurriisset*, see A. & G. 325: A. & S. 263, 5, REM. 2: B. 304, RULE LXV.: B. & M. 1244: G. 591, II.: H. 521, II., 2: C. 214, 5. — *moreretur*, see 139. — *nequāquam*, *antea*, what do they modify? — *obviam facta*, *having met*; *obviam* is used with the Dative. — *ausa est*, see LN. XCII., NOTE 31.

7. *pascabantur*, what does the Imperfect Tense denote? see 36. — *boves*, see note on *boves*, Fable 5. — *petiti*, sc. *sunt*. — *boni*, see LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1. — *sit*, see 151.

8. *pelle*, see 54. — *indūtus*, *having clothed himself*. — *esset*, see A. & G. 312: A. & S. 263, 2: G. 604: H. 513, II.: C. 220. — *movet*, see LN. LXXXII., NOTE 11. — *unde*, *for which reason*, i. e. because his ears stuck out. — *agnitus*, from *agnosco*; render as if it were *agnitus est*, and supply *and*. — *dedit*, *suffered*. — *honoribus*, see 79.

9. *suspiciari*, see 69. — *coepit*, see 127. — *illam*, why in the Accusative? why Feminine? — *quod* is here equivalent to *id quod*; compare the English *what*, equivalent to *that which*. — *solet*, see LN. XCII., NOTE 31. — *majoribus*, see 84 and 85. — *divitiis*, see 67. — *minores*, what does it modify?

10. *duo*, see 108 and LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9. — *accurrunt*, see LN. LXXXII., NOTE 1. — *laeti*, *joyfully*; see A. & G. 191: A. & S. 205, REM. 15: B. 270, b: B. & M. 663: G. 324, REMARK 6: H. 443: C. 113, 6. — *prior*, see note on *laeti*; the comparative is used when two only are mentioned. — *conspexisset*, see 149. — *eo*, see 104.

11. *tubicen*, what is its derivation? see GEN. VY. — *inquit*, see note on *inquit*, Fable 2. — *interfocite*, see 47. — *inermis*, derivation? see GEN. VY. — *propter hoc ipsum*, *for this very reason*; what is the reason? — *pugnandi*, see 153 and 140. — *sis*, see 145. — *soles*, see LN. XCII., NOTE 31. — *esse puniendos*, see 130. — *eos*, why in the Accusative? — *irritant*, see A. & G. 320: A. & S. 264, 1 (a.): B. 301: B. & M. 1220, b: G. 633: H. 500, I.: C. 223, 1.

12. *vulpes*, see A. & G. 30, b: A. & S. 33: B. 118, III., REM. 2: B. & M. 41: G. 20, 3: H. 43, 3: C. 13, I., 3. — *omnium* — *contentione*, *with all its might*; what is the literal translation? for the Abl. *contentione*, see 54. — *Si*, (*to see*) *whether*. — *posset*, see 151. — *repertas*, from *reperio*; see 121. — *tollērem*, see 143 and A. & G. 310, a: A. & S. 261, REM. 4: B. 305, *third clause*: G. 594, 2: H. 507, NOTE 7: C. 219; 250. — *quae*, see 34. — *se*, see 53. — *desperēt*, see note on *irritant*, Fable 11.

13. *quomodo*, (*to see*) *by what means*. — *sibi*, see A. & G. 227, c: A. & S. 223: B. 239: B. & M. 836: G. 347: H. 385, 1: C. 160. — *cavērent*,

see 151. — *aliis*, see LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1 and 122. — *placuit*, what is its subject? — *annecteretur*, see A. & G. 332, *a*: A. & S. 262, REM. 3: B. 301, RULE LXII.: B. & M. 1222: G. 558: H. 501, I., 1: C. 208. — *sic* — *posse*; this Infinitive Clause depends upon some such expression as *they thought, they said*. — *quaereretur*, see note on *occurrisset*, Fable 6; what is the subject of *quaereretur*? — *suadendo*, see 153. — *plurimos*, see 85 and LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9.

14. *inhaeserat*, from *inhaereo*. — *mercède*, see 146. — *extrahat*, see 136. — *hoc*, what was *this* that the crane accomplished? — *postularet*, see note on *occurrisset*, Fable 6. — *num*, what answer is implied? See LN. LXI., NOTE 1. — *merces*, see 64. — *videtur*, what is its subject? — *faucibus*, how declined in the Singular? in the Plural? See GEN. VY.

II. STORIES FROM EARLY ROMAN HISTORY.

1. *Janicūlo*, the *Janiculum* is a hill on the west side of the Tiber; the *seven hills* are on the east side; these are the *Palatine*, *Capitoline*, *Quirinal*, *Aventine*, *Coelian*, *Esquiline*, and *Viminal*. — *eam Saturniam*, see 58. — *Itālos*, *agricultūram*, see 71. — *primus* — *docuit*, *was the first who taught*; see A. & G. 191: A. & S. 205, REM. 15: B. 271, REMARK: B. & M. 663: G. 324, 7: H. 442, NOTE: C. 113, 6, note 1.

2. *in* — *regionibus*; what country is meant? — *sub*, *in the reign of*. — *Troja*, *Troy* is said to have been destroyed in B. C. 1184. — *hinc*, *from this place*, i. e. from *Troy*. — *Aenēae*, *Anchisae*, how declined? See A. & G. 37: A. & S. 44: B. 125: B. & M. 52: G. 72: H. 50: C. 20. — *quibus*, see 132. — *Lavinium* was situated about 16 miles south of Rome, three miles from the coast.

3. *Aenēae*, see note on *Aenēae* in preceding section. — *transtūlit*, see 123. — *Albam Longam*, *Alba Longa* was about 16 miles southeast of Rome, situated on the western slope of the Alban Mount and overlooking the Alban Lake. — *secutus est*, *succeeded*. — *genitus erat*, from *gigno*. — *ad Romam conditam*, *until the founding of Rome*; what is the literal translation? — *Albae*, see 106.

4. *Jove*, see 133 and A. & G. 60, *b*, page 25: A. & S. 85: B. 138: B. & M. 123: H. 66, 3: C. 31. — *tonāret*, see 128 and note on *occurrisset*, Fable 6. — *multo*, see 144. — *tonitru*, what case? why? — *ictus*, *sc. est*. — *Albānum Lacum*, see note on *Albam Longam* in section 3.

5. *minor natu* = *junior*; for *natu*, see 124. — *vellet*, see 128 and 151. *reliquisset*, see LN. LXXXIX., NOTE 5.

6. *vestālem virgīnem*, a *vestal virgin* was bound by a vow of chastity; if she broke her vow she was buried alive. — *licet*, what is its subject? — *viro nubēre*, to *marry*; for *viro*, see 132; what does *nubēre* mean? — *pepērit*, from *pario*. — *hoc*, what was it that Amulius had found out?

7. *essent positi*, see A. & G. 326; A. & S. 263, 5: B. 302, 1: B. & M. 1251: G. 587: H. 517: C. 214, 3. — *quod*, what is its antecedent? what did a *certain Faustus* see? — *regiōnis*, what *region* is meant? — *nutriendos*, to be *nourished*, modifies *pueros*, and expresses the purpose of *dedit*.

8. *adoleviscent*, from *adoleasco*; see note on *occurrisset*, Fable 6. — *quis*, see 64. — *avus*, sc. *fuisse* and see 151. — *monte Aventino*, *Mount Aventine*, one of the seven hills of Rome. The best authorities agree that Rome was built at first on the Palatine, which hill stands a short distance northeast of the Aventine.

9. *civibus*, see A. & G. 231, a: A. & S. 226, REM. 2: B. 342, REM. 3: B. & M. 820: H. 386: C. 154. — *inter*, in the *midst of*. — *ip̄os*, *very*. — *spectantes*, translate by a relative clause.

10. *Romae*, see 67. — *in incidērunt*, they came *unexpectedly upon*. — *quod*, see note on *quod*, Fable 9. — *gerērent*, see LN. LXXXIX., NOTE 5. — *et ea*, *these also*, i. e. as well as the rings and bracelets.

11. *Montem Tarpeium*, the *Tarpeian mount*; probably the Capitoline hill. — *forum Romānum*, the *Roman Forum*, an open space in the valley between the Capitoline and Palatine, surrounded by temples and other buildings; here the Roman people, the *Populus Romanus*, met to transact business. — *media*, *midst of*. — *raptae*, sc. *muliēres*. — *hinc* — *hinc*, *here* — *there*. — *utrique*, who are meant? — *icit*, compare the English expression, *strike a bargain*; the Romans were accustomed to offer a sacrifice to confirm a treaty, and hence this use of *ico*.

12. *quum* — *tum*, *both* — *and*. — *raptārum*, sc. *muliērum*. — *inter*, in the *midst of*. — *ortam*, which had *arisen*. — *ocūlis*, see 67. — *hinc*, i. e. by reason of the fact mentioned in the preceding sentence. — *alii* — *alii*, *some* — *others*. — *interfectum*, sc. *esse*. — *sublātum esse* from *tollo*.

13. *quo*, what is its antecedent? — *Curibus*, see 106. — *jussu*, see 79. *facēre*, what is its object? — *morbo decessit*, i. e. Numa died a natural death, which has not always been the lot of kings; with *decessit* supply *de vita*.

14. *praestitērat*, what does it govern? see 58. — *creātus*, see LN. LXIII. and EXAMPLES. — *Horatiōrum*. The Horatii fought for Rome, the Curiatii for Alba. The three Curiatii fell, but one of the Horatii survived; this gave the victory to the Romans. — *Metti Fufēti*, see 17; for his treachery he was torn asunder by horses driven in opposite directions, and his city Alba razed to the ground. The inhabitants of Alba were removed

to Rome and located on the Caelian Hill ; this was the origin of the Roman *Plebs*. — *annis* expresses *duration of time* ; what is the more usual construction ? see 93. — *arsit*, fr. *ardeo*, *ardere*, *arsi*, *arsum*, *burn*.

15. *sequitur*, see 124. — *avo*, see 86. — *bello*, see 54. — *ei*, see A. & G. 225, d : A. & S. 249, REM. 3 : B. 242, REM. 3 : B. & M. 359 : G. 348 : H. 384, II., 2 : C. 152. — *primus*, see note on *primus*, section 1. — *obiit*, see 126 and note on *morbo decessit*, section 13.

16. *deinde*, i. e. after the death of Ancus Marcius. — *qui* refers to *Demarati*. — *advenienti*, sc. *ei* and see A. & G. 229 : A. & S. 224, REM. 1 : B. 242, REM. 3 : B. & M. 329 : H. 386, 2 : C. 151. — *abstulit* from *aufëro*, *auferre*, *abstuli*, *ablätum*, *carry off* ; derived from *ab* *away*, *off* ; and *fero* *carry*. — *auguriörum*, see 140.

17. *Romae*, see 106. — *commoraretur*, see note on *occurrisset*, Fable 6. — *tutörem*, as *guardian* ; compare 58. — *pupillis*, see 67. — *gentium* modifies *senatöres* understood. — *plura*, *several* ; how declined ? See LN. LXXXIV., NOTE 11. — *ademptos*, from *adimo*. — *primus*, see note on *primus*, section 1. — *Cloacas*. The main *sewer*, known as the *Cloaca Maxima*, and a branch running from the Forum are still in use. — *Capitolium*, the *Capitol*, signifies here the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline. — *per filios*, at the instigation of the sons ; they hired assassins to murder him : a *filii* would signify that they killed him with their own hands. — *quibus*, see note on *ei*, section 16.

18. *genitus*, from *gigno*. — *captiva*, see 25. — *domo*, how declined ? See 97. — *conjügi*, see 132 and Ex. 1. — *educaret*, see 136.

19. *domus* ; this stood on the Palatine. — *regem* — *obediret* ; change this to the Direct Discourse ; see 152. — *eum* refers to *regem*. — *coepit*, see 127. — *montes* — *adjunxit*. The Palatine, Capitoline, Quirinal, and Aventine had been previously occupied. — *millia*, how declined ? see 108. — *civium*, see LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1.

20. *scelere*, see 79. — *filiae*, see 25. — *curiae*. The *senate-house* stood near the Forum. — *domum*, see 105 ; how declined ? — *prima*, see note on *primus*, section 1. — *regem*, as *king* ; compare 58.

21. *cognömen*, i. e. *Superbus*, the *Proud*. — *moribus*, see 79. — *bello*, see 111. — *plures*, how declined ? see note on *plura*, section 17. — *populörum*, see LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1. — *Templum*. This temple had been begun by Tarquinius Priscus ; see section 17. — *Jovis*, how declined ? see note on *Jove*, section 4. — *Lucretiae*, see 39. — *vim*, how declined ? See GEN. VY. — *ut* — *ulciscerentur*, see 136 and LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

22. *in*, *for*. — *conjurarunt*, see LN. LXXV., NOTE 11. — *populo*, see 132. — *ei*, against him ; see 39. — *civitatem* = *urbem*. — *Ardea* was situated about 18 miles south of Rome.

GENERAL VOCABULARY.

I. Latin-English.

Numerals and Pronouns not given in this Vocabulary can be found in the Grammar.

The References are to Sections of this book.

The English words in SMALL CAPITALS are derived either directly or indirectly from the Latin words under which they stand, or from the same Root.

The parts in Parentheses give the derivation of the Latin words. For Abbreviations see page xii.

A.

A., abbreviation of *Aulus*, a Roman praenomen.

āb, ā, prep. w. abl. *from, away from; by; on the side of.*

ab-dūco, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm (ab away, duco lead), lead away. **ABDUCT, ABDUCTION.**

ab-jicio, jicērē, jēcī, jectūm (ab away, down; jacio cast), cast away or down. **ABJECT.**

abstīneo, tīnērē, tīnui, tentūm (ab(s) from, teneo keep), keep from, **ABSTAIN. ABSTINENCE.**

ab-sūm, essē, fui (ab away, sum be) be away, be **ABSENT, be distant.**

āc. See **atquē.**

Accā, ae, f., Acca Larentia, the wife of Faustu's.

ac-cēdo, cēdērē, cessī, cessūm (ad towards, cedo go), go towards, draw near, approach; assault. **ACCEDE, ACCESSION.**

ac-cīdo, cīdērē, cīdī (ad upon, cado fall), fall upon, befall, happen. **ACCIDENT.**

ac-cīpio, cīpērē, cēpī, ceptūm (ad to one's self, capio take), receive, **ACCEPT, take.**

ac-curro, currērē, cūcurrī and currī, cursūm (ad to, curro run), run to, hasten to.

accūso, ārē, āvī, atūm (ad to, causa a lawsuit), **ACCUSE, blame, censure. ACCUSATION.**

ācēr, ācrīs, ācrē, sharp. ACRID.

acerbūs, ā, ūm, sour. ACERBITY.

aciēs, aciēi, f., *edge; line, line of battle; army in battle-array.*

See **agmen**.

acritēr, acriūs, acerrimē, adv.

(*acer sharp*), *sharply, fiercely, violently.*

ad, prep. w. acc. to, towards; for; near; w. numerals, about; w. names of towns, towards, in or into the vicinity of.

ad-āmo, ārē, āvi, ātūm (ad denoting a beginning, amo love), *begin to love, acquire a liking for.*

ad-do, dērē, didi, dītūm (ad to, beside; do put), ADD.

ad-dūco, dūcērē, duxi, ductūm (ad to, duco lead), *lead to, lead; influence.*

ad-eo, irē, ii, itūm (ad to, eo go), *go to.* See 126.

ad-īmo, imērē, ēmi, emptūm (ad to one's self, emo take), *take away.*

ādītūs, ūs, m. (adeo go to), *approach, access.*

ad-jungo, jungērē, junxi, junctūm (ad to, jungo join), *join to, join.*

ad-mīnistro, ārē, āvi, ātūm (ad without additional force, ministro serve), ADMINISTER, *manage.* ADMINISTRATION, ADMINISTRATOR.

ad-mitto, mittērē, misi, missūm (ad to, mitto let go), *allow, ADMIT; give the reins to; equo admissio, at full speed.* ADMISSION.

ad-mōneo, mōnērē, mōnuī, mōnītūm (ad w. no perceptible additional force, moneo admonish), ADMONISH, *warn.* ADMONITION.

adōlesco, adōlescērē, adōlēvi, adultūm (adoleo cause to grow up), *grow, increase, grow up.* ADULT.

ad-sūm, ad-essē, af-fui (ad near, sum be), *be near, be present; assist.*

ad-vēnio, venirē, vēni, ventūm (ad to, venio come), *come to, arrive, come.* ADVENTURE.

adventūs, ūs, m. (advenio come to), *arrival, approach.* ADVENT.

adversūs and adversūm, prep. w. acc. towards, against.

ad-vertō, vertērē, verti, versūm (ad towards, verto turn), *turn towards; id animum ad-vertēre, to turn the mind towards it, to perceive it.* ADVERT.

aedificiūm, ī, n. (aedifico build), *building, EDIFICE.*

aedifico, ārē, āvi, ātūm (aedes building for habitation, facio make), *build.* EDIFY, EDIFICATION.

Aedui, ōrūm, m. pl., *a tribe in Central Gaul.*

aegēr, aegrā, aegrūm, sick.

Aenēas, ae, m., *a Trojan prince, son of Venus and Anchises.*

aequītās, ātis, f. (aequus fair, equitable), EQUITY, *justice, moderation.*

aequūs, ā, ūm, even, level ;

EQUAL ; like ; fair, equitable.

aestās, ātis, f., summer.

aetās, ātis, f., age.

af-fēro, af-ferrē, at-tūli, al-lātūm
(ad to, fero bring), bring to,
carry to ; offer ; carry.

af-ficio, ficērē, fēcī, fectūm (ad
to, facio do), AFFECT, influence ;
magno dolōre affici, to be very
grievously affected.

āgēr, agrī, m., field, land ; country,
territory.

aggēr, aggērīs, m., mound ; mate-
rials for a mound.

ag-grēdior, grēdī, gressūs sūm
(ad to, gradior go), go to, ap-
proach ; go against, attack. AG-
GRESSION, AGGRESSIVE.

agmēn, agmīnīs, n. (ago put in
motion), army on the march,
line of march ; [acies, army in
battle array ; exercītus, a dis-
ciplined army] ; **agmen novis-
simum**, the rear ; **primum
agmen**, the van.

ag-nosco, noscērē, nōvī, nītūm
(ad denoting reference, (g)nos-
co know), recognize : know.

āgo, āgērē, ēgī, actūm, put in
motion ; lead, drive, conduct ; act,
do, perform. ACTION, AGENT.

agricultūrā, ae, f. (ager field,
colo cultivate), AGRICULTURE.

ālācēr, ālacrīs, ālacrē, lively,
cheerful ; eager, fierce.

ālacrītās, ātis, f. (alacer lively),
liveliness, eagerness, zeal. ALAC-
RITY.

Albā or **Albā Longā**, the mother
city of Rome, built by Ascanius.

Albānūs, ī, m., an Alban, an in-
habitant of Alba.

aliquandō, adv. (aliquis some
one), at some time, once, for-
merly.

āliquis, indef. pron. [see 116, a],
some one, somebody, something,
some ; any one, anybody, anything,
any.

āliūs, āliā, āliūd [see 24], other,
another.

Allobrōgēs, um, m. pl., a people
in the southeastern part of
Gaul.

al-lōquor, lōquī, lōcūtūs sūm
(ad to, loquor speak), speak to,
address.

ālo, ālērē, āluī, ālītūm or **al-
tūm**, nourish, feed, support.

Alpēs, Alpiūm, f. pl. the ALPS.

altē, altiūs, altissimē (altus
high, low), on high, highly ; low,
lowly.

altēr, altērā, altērūm [see 24],
one of two, the other, the second ;
altēr — altēr, the one — the
other.

altītūdo, altītūdīnīs, f. (altus
high, deep), height ; depth ; ALTI-
TUDE.

altūs, ā, ūm (alo nourish), high,
lofty ; deep.

āmīcitiā, ae, f. (amicus friendly),
friendship.

āmīcūs, ā, ūm (amo love), loving,
friendly ; **āmīcūs, ī, m.** friend.
AMICABLE.

ā-mitto, mittērē, misi, missūm
(ab away, mitto let go), lose.

amplio, ārē, āvi, ātūm (amplus of large extent), enlarge.

ampliūs, adv. more, farther.

Amuliūs, i, m., son of Silvius Procas and brother of Numitor.

ān, adv. or.

Anchisēs, ae, m., a Trojan, the father of Aenēas.

Ancūs Marciūs, i, m., the fourth king of Rome.

angustiae, ārūm, f. pl. (angustus narrow), narrow pass, defile; difficulty.

ānim-ad-vertō, vertērē, verti, versūm (animus mind, ad-vertō turn towards), notice. ANIM-ADVERT, ANIMADVERSION.

ānimāl, ānimālīs, n., ANIMAL.

ānimūs, i, m., mind, soul; disposition; affection; feeling, courage.

[animus denotes the human soul, including all its faculties, including mens; mens denotes the thinking, MENTAL faculty.]

an-necto, nectērē, nexui, nexūm (ad to, necto tie, fasten), tie to, fasten to. ANNEX.

annūs, i, m., year. ANNUAL.

antē, prep. w. acc., before; adv. before, previously. ANTE in ANTECEDENT, etc.

anteā, adv. (ante before, ea that), before, previously.

antiquūs, ā, ūm (ante before), ancient, old; of long continuance.

ANTIQUÉ, ANTIQUATED.

ānūlūs, i, m., ring. ANNULAR.

Ap, abbreviation of Appius, a Roman prænomen.

āpertūs, ā, ūm (aperio uncover), uncovered, unprotected.

ap-pello, ārē, āvi, ātūm (ad to, pello bring one's self to a person), address; name, call. AP-PEAL, APPELLATION.

ap-prōpinquo, ārē, āvi, ātūm (ad to, propinquo draw near), draw near to, approach.

āpūd, prep. w. acc, at, near, in presence of, among.

āquā, ae, f., water. AQUEDUCT.

āquīlā, ae, f., eagle.

Aquillōiā, ae, f., a town at the head of the Adriatic Sea.

Aquitāni, ōrūm, m. pl., inhabitants of Aquitania.

Aquitāniā, ae, f., the southwestern division of Gaul.

Arār, Arāris, acc. Arārim, m., the Saône [pronounced Sōne], a river in Gaul, tributary to the Rhone.

arcesso, arcessērē, arcessivī, arcessitūm, invite, summon.

arceo, arcērē, arcui, drive away; ward off, keep from; restrain.

Ardea, ae, f., a city of Latium, capital of the Rutūli.

armā, ōrūm, n. pl., ARMS, weapons.

armillā, ae, f., bracelet or ring, worn on the left arm by soldiers as a reward for valor.

Ariovistus, i, m., a powerful German king in the time of Caesar.

ar-rīpio, rīpērē, rīpuī, reptūm
(ad upon, rapio seize), seize upon.

arrogantiā, ae, f. (arrogans assuming), haughtiness, insolence, ARROGANCE.

Arvernī, ōrūm, m. pl., a people in the eastern part of Aquitania.

arx, arcīs, f., citadel, fortress.

Ascaniūs, ī, m., son of Aeneas.

Asia, ae, f., ASIA.

āsīnūs, ī, m., an ass.

as-sēquor, sēquī, sēcūtūs sūm
(ad with no perceptible additional force, sequor follow), follow; overtake; obtain.

āsylūm, ī, n. ASYLUM.

āt, conj. but.

at-tingo, tingērē, tīgī, tactūm
(ad against, tango touch), touch against, border upon; touch, reach.

atquē, ēc, conj. (ad in addition, que and), and also, and.

auctōritās, ātis, f. (auctor producer), AUTHORITY, influence.

audāciā, ae, f. (audax bold), boldness, AUDACITY.

audācītēr or audactēr, audāciūs, audācissimē, adv. (audax bold), boldly, courageously.

audax, gen. audācis (audeo dare), bold, daring, AUDACIOUS.

audeo, audērē, ausūs sūm [see LN. XCII., NOTE 31], dare, venture.

audio, irē, ivī, itūm, hear. AUDIT, AUDITOR, AUDIENCE.

au-fūgio, fūgērē, fūgī, fūgītūm
(ab away, fugio flee), flee away, escape; flee.

augeo, augērē, auxī, auctūm, increase, AUGMENT.

augūrium, ī, n. (auguror fr. augur diviner), AUGURY, divination.

aureūs, ā, ūm (aurum gold), golden.

aurigā, ae, m. (aurea bridle, ago manage), charioteer.

aurīs, auris, f. ear. AURI-CULAR.

aurūm, ī, n., gold.

aut, conj. or; **aut — aut, eūher — or.**

autēm, conj. but, yet, moreover.

auxillium, ī, n. (augeo increase), help, aid; pl. AUXILIARIES.

Aventinūs, ī, m., the Aventine.

aversūs, ā, ūm (averto turn away), turned away; **aveisus hostis, a retreating enemy.**

ā-vertō, vertērē, vertī, versūm
(ab away, verto turn), turn away, turn aside, AVERT. AVERSION.

āvūs, ī, m., grandfather.

B.

barbārūs, ā, ūm, foreign: uncivilized; savage, rude, BARBAROUS. BARBARIAN.

beātūs, ā, ūm (beo bless), happy. BEATIFIC.

Belgae, ārūm, m. pl., a powerful people dwelling in Northern Gaul.

bellicoŏsus, ā, ūm, *warlike*.

bello, āre, āvi, atŭm (*bellum* war), *carry on war*.

bellŭm ī, n., *war*.

bēnē, adv., *well, finely*.

bēnēficiŭm, ī, n., *kindness*, BENEFIT. BENEFICIAL.

bēnignē, adv. (*benignus kind*), *kindly*; BENIGNLY. BENIGN, BENIGNANT.

bestiā, ae, f., *BEAST*.

Bibractē, īs, n., the chief town of the Aedui.

biennium, ī, n. (*bis twice, annus year*), *two years*. BIENNIAL.

Bōi, ōrŭm, m. pl., the Boii [pronounced Bō-yi], a nomadic people dwelling chiefly in Gaul, Italy, and Germany.

bōnŭs, ā, ūm, *good, friendly*; **bōnŭm**, ī, n. *a good thing, an advantage*; **bōnā**, ōrŭm, n. pl., *goods, an estate*.

bōs, bōvis, m. and f., *ox, cow*.

brēvis, brēvē, *short*, BRIEF.

Brūtŭs, ī, m. (*brutus stupid*), *I. Junius Brutus*, the deliverer of Rome from regal dominion.

C.

C., abbreviation of **Gāiŭs** [pronounced Gā-yus], a Roman praenomen.

caedēs, caedis, f. (*caedo kill*), *murder, slaughter, carnage*.

caedo, caedērē, cēcīdī, caesŭm, *cut, cut down; kill, mur-*

der. -CIDE in PARRI-CIDE, MATRI-CIDE, etc.

Caesār, Caesāris, m., *Caius Julius Caesar*, a distinguished Roman general, orator, statesman, and author.

Cāiŭs Vālērīŭs Procillus, a distinguished Gaul, friend of Caesar.

cālāmītās, ātis, f., *CALAMITY, disaster, misfortune*.

campŭs, ī, m., *plain, field*; **Campus**, the *Campus Martius*, a grassy plain just outside the walls of Rome on which the people assembled for elections, military drills, and games.

cānis, cānis, m. and f., *dog*.

cāpio, cāpērē, cēpī, captŭm, *take*, CAPTURE.

Cāpītōlium, ī, n. (*caput head*), THE CAPITOL, the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline hill at Rome; *the Capitoline hill*, including both temple and citadel.

caprā, ae, f., *a she-goat*.

captivŭs, ā, ūm (*capio capture*), CAPTIVE; **captivŭs**, ī, m., *a captive, a prisoner*.

cāpŭt, cāpītis, n., *head*. OCCIPUT.

carcēr, carcēris, m., *prison*. INCARCERATE.

cāreo, cārērē, cārui, cārītŭm, *be without, lack*.

carpentŭm, ī, n., *chariot*.

carrŭs, ī, m., *CART, wagon*.

cārŭs, ā, ūm, *dear, beloved*.

Cassiŭs, ī, m., a Roman name.

castellūm, *i*, n. (*castrum a fortified place*), CASTLE, fort, stronghold.

Casticūs, *i*, m., a chief of the Sequani.

castrā, **ōrūm**, n. pl., soldiers' huts, camp.

causā, *ae*, f., CAUSE, reason, motive; **causā**, for the sake of, when following a Genitive; **causam dicere**, to plead one's cause.

cāveo, **cāvērē**, **cāvī**, **cautūm**, be on one's guard. CAUTIOUS.

cēlēr, **cēlērīs**, **cēlērē** (*cello impel*), swift, speedy. CELERITY.

cēlērītēr, **cēlērīūs**, **cēlerrīmē**, adv. (*celer swift*), swiftly, quickly, immediately.

cēlo, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm**, CONCEAL, hide.

censūs, **ūs**, m. (*censeo assess, register*), CENSUS.

Centrōnēs, **ūm**, m. pl., a tribe in Southeastern Gaul.

centūm, num. adj. indecl., hundred.

certāmēn, **certāmīnīs**, n. (*certo contend*), contest; battle.

certūs, **ā**, **ūm** (*cerno determine*), CERTAIN, sure; **Caesarēm certīdrem facere**, to inform Caesar.

cētērī, *ae*, **ā**, adj. pl., the rest.

cībūs, *i*, m., food.

cingo, **cingērē**, **cingī**, **cinctūm**, surround, encircle. CINCTURE.

circītēr, adv. (*circus circle*), about, near.

circūm, prep. w. acc. (*circus circle*), around; near, in the environs of. CIRCUM- is a prefix in many English words; e. g. CIRCUM-FERENCE, CIRCUM-NAVIGATE.

circum-do, **dārē**, **dēdī**, **dātūm** (*circum around, do put*), put around, surround.

circum-vēnio, **vēnirē**, **vēnī**, **ventūm** (*circum around, venio come*), come around, surround; CIRCUMVENT.

cītērīor, **cītērīūs** [see 85], hither.

citrā, prep. w. acc., this side of.

cīvīs, **cīvīs**, m. and f., citizen. CIVIL.

cīvītās, **ātīs**, f. (*civis citizen*), a body of citizens, a state; citizenship.

clārūs, **ā**, **ūm**, CLEAR; famous.

claudio, **claudērē**, **clausī**, **clausūm**, close, enclose, shut; **agmen claudere**, to bring up the rear. INCLUDE, EXCLUDE.

cliens, **clientīs**, m. and f. (*clueo hear*), CLIENT, vassal.

clīpeūs or **clīpeūs**, *i*, m., shield.

cloācā, *ae*, f., drain, sewer; **Cloāca maxīma**, the great sewer in Rome, constructed by Tarquinius Priscus.

coepī, **coepissē** [see 127], have begun, began.

cōgīto, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (*cum denoting completeness, agito weigh in the mind*), consider, reflect upon. COGITATE.

cognōmēn, cognōmīnīs, n. (cum denoting *similarity*, (g)nomen name), a surname.

co-gnosco, gnoscērē, gnōvī, gnītūm (cum denoting *completeness*, (g)nosco know), know completely; find out, ascertain, learn, discover. **COGNITION.**

cōgo, cōgērē, cōgī, coactūm (cum together, ago drive), drive or lead together, collect; compel. **COGENT.**

cohors, cohortīs, f., COHORT, the tenth part of a legion.

co-hortor, ārī, ātūs sūm (cum intensive, hortor urge), exhort, encourage.

Collātīnūs, ī, m., cognomen of L. Tarquinius.

collīs, collīs, m., a hill.

col-lōco, ārē, āvī, ātūm (cum denoting *completeness*, loco place), lay, put, place; nuptum — collocāre, to give in marriage. **COLLOCATE, COLLOCATION.**

collōquiūm, ī, n. (colloquor speak together), conference, interview. **COLLOQUY.**

col-lōquor, lōquī, lōcūtūs sūm (cum with, loquor speak), speak with, hold a conference.

collūm, ī, n., neck.

cōlo, cōlērē, cōluī, cultūm, dwell; till, **CULTIVATE**; honor.

com-būro, būrērē, bussī, bustūm (cum denoting *completeness*, (b)uro burn), burn up. **COMBUSTION.**

comītium, ī, n. (cum together, eo go), the comitium, a place where the Romans assembled to vote.

commeātūs, ūs, m. (commeo come and go), supplies, provisions.

com-mēmōro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (cum intensive, memoro remind of), call to mind; relate. **COMMEMORATION.**

com-meo, ārē, āvī, ātūm (cum denoting *frequency*, meo go), come and go, resort; ad Belgas commeāre, to visit the Belgae.

com-mitto, mittērē, mīsī, misūm (cum together, mitto cause to go), join; begin; **COMMIT. COMMISSION.**

commodē, adv. (commodus advantageous), advantageously, fitly, conveniently; satis commodē, conveniently enough, with sufficient ease.

commōdūs, ā, ūm (cum denoting *completeness*, modus measure), advantageous, suitable, fit. **COMMODIOUS.**

com-mōror, ārī, ātūs sūm (cum denoting *completeness*, moror tarry), stop; reside, stay at; remain.

com-mōveo, mōvērē, mōvī, mōtūm (cum intensive, moveo more), move, affect, excite, disturb, stir up, induce. **COMMOTION.**

com-mūnio, mūnirē, mūnīvī and **mūnī, mūnītūm** (cum

denoting completeness, *munio* fortify), fortify on all sides.

commūnis, commūnē (cum together, *munis* serving), COMMON.

com-pāro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (cum intensive, *paro* prepare), prepare with zeal, make ready.

com-pērio, pērīrē, pēri, per-tūm, learn, discover.

com-plector, plectī, plexūs sūm (cum with, *plector* entwine one's self), embrace.

complūrēs, complūrā (rarely *complūriā*), gen. *complūri-tūm*, adj. pl. (cum together, *plures* several), several together, very many.

com-porto, ārē, āvī, ātūm (cum together, *porto* bring), bring together, collect. COMPORT.

cōnātūm, ī, n. (conor to attempt), an attempt.

con-cēdo, cēdērē, cessī, cessūm (cum denoting completeness, *cedo* yield), grant; CONCEDE. CONCESSION.

concilio, ārē, āvī, ātūm (concilium a calling together), bring together; win, CONCILIATE.

concilium, ī, n. (cum together, *calo* call), COUNCIL, assembly.

concordiā, ae, f. (concor fr. cum denoting similarity, *cor* heart), CONCORD, harmony.

con-curro, currērē, cūcurri and curri, cursūm (cum together, *curro* run), rush together; hasten. CONCURRENT.

conditio, conditiōnis, f. (condo put together), CONDITION.

condo, condērē, condīdī, condītūm (cum together, *do* put), found, build.

con-dūco, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm (cum together, *duco* lead), lead together, collect; hire; CONDUCE.

con-fēro, ferrē, tūlī, col-lātūm (cum together, *fēro* bring), bring together, collect; put off; CONFERR; *se conferre*, to betake one's self. CONFERENCE, COL-LATE, COLLATION.

con-ficio, ficērē, fēcī, fectūm (cum denoting completeness, *facio* make), execute, accomplish, finish. CONFECTION.

con-firmo, ārē, āvī, ātūm (cum denoting completeness, *firmus* firm), establish, strengthen, CONFIRM; encourage; assert. CONFIRMATION.

con-jicio, jicērē, jēcī, jectūm (cum intensive, *jacio* throw), hurl. CONJECTURE.

conjūrātio, conjūrātiōnis, f. (conjūro swear together), conspiracy.

con-jūro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (cum together, *juro* swear), swear together; conspire. CONJURE.

conjux, conjūgis, m. and f. (conjungo fr. cum together, *jungo* join), spouse, husband, wife.

cōnor, ārī, ātūs sūm, attempt, try. CONATIVE.

conscītūs, ā, ūm (*cum with, scio know*), CONSCIOUS.

con-sensūs, ūs, m. (*consentio think together*), agreement, CONSENT.

con-sēquor, sēquī, sēcūtūs sūm (*cum denoting completeness, sequor follow*), follow after, follow; gain; obtain. CONSEQUENT.

con-sēro, sērērē, sērui, sertūm (*cum together, sero join*), join together, join; **pugnam con-serēre**, to join battle, to fight.

Considiūs, i, m., Publius Considius, an officer in Caesar's army.

con-sīdo, sīdērē, sēdi, sessūm (*cum together, sīdo sit down*), sit down together, encamp.

consiliūm, i, n., deliberation, COUNSEL, plan, design.

con-sisto, sistērē, stīti, stītūm (*cum denoting completeness, sisto place one's self*), take a stand; keep a position; halt. CONSIST, CONSISTENT.

con-sōlor, āri, ātūs sūm (*cum intensive, solor comfort*), comfort greatly, CONSOLE; encourage, cheer.

conspēctūs, ūs, m. (*conspicio look at*), sight, view, presence.

con-spīcio, spīcērē, spexī, spectūm (*cum denoting completeness, specio look*), behold, see.

conspīcor, āri, ātūs sūm (*conspicio*), behold, see.

constantiā, ae, f. (*constans standing firm*), firmness, steadfastness, CONSTANCY.

con-stītuo, stītuērē, stītuī, stī-

tūtūm (*cum denoting completeness, statuo cause to stand*), resolve, determine; establish, station.

CONSTITUTE, CONSTITUENT.

consuesco, consuescērē, consuevi, consuētūm, become accustomed, be wont.

consūl, consūlis, m. (akin to *consulo consult*), CONSUL; one of the two chief magistrates at Rome, chosen annually.

con-sūmo, sūmērē, sumpsi, sumptūm (*cum denoting completeness, sumo take*), CONSUME, waste, destroy. CONSUMPTION.

con-temno, temnērē, tempsi, temptūm, despise, CONTEMN. CONTEMPT.

con-tendo, tendērē, tendi, tentūm (*cum denoting completeness, tendo stretch*), hasten, march in haste; contend, dispute, fight; w. inf. proceed, set out eagerly.

contentio, contentiōnis, f. (*contendo contend*), CONTENTION, strife.

con-tīneo, tīnērē, tīnuī, tentūm (*cum together, teneo hold*), hold together; encompass, hem in, bound; occupy, restrain. CONTENT, CONTINENT.

continentēr, adv. (*contīnens hanging together*), continually, without cessation.

con-tingo, tingērē, tīgī, tactūm (*cum denoting completeness, tango touch*), touch on all sides; touch, border upon. CONTACT.

contrā, prep. w. acc., against.

contūmēliā, ae, f. (cum intensive, *tumeo swell*), insult, abuse; disgrace. CONTUMELY.

con-vālesco, vālescēřě, vālui (cum denoting completeness, *valesco grow strong*), regain health, recover. CONVALESCENT.

con-vēnio, vēnirě, vēni, ven-tūm (cum together, *venio come*), come together, assemble; CONVENT. CONVENTION.

conventūs, ūs, m. (*convenio come together*), court; **conventum agēre**, to hold a court.

con-vertō, vertěřě, verti, ver-sūm (cum denoting completeness, *verto turn*), turn about, change; in *fugam convertēre*, to put to flight. CONVERT, CONVERSION.

con-vōcō, āre, āvi, ātūm (cum together, *voco call*), call together, summon, CONVOKE. CONVOCA-TION.

cōpiā, ae, f. (cum denoting completeness, *ops means of any kind*), plenty, abundance, supply; number; pl., *forces, troops*; riches.

cōpiōsūs, ā, ūm (*copia plenty, osus full of*), wealthy, well-supplied; COPIOUS.

cōrām, prep. w. abl., in the presence of; before: adv., openly.

Cōrīnthūs, ī, f., Corinth, a city in Greece.

corpūs, corpōris, n., body; CORPSE.

cornū, ūs, n., horn; wing, flank of an army.

cor-rōdo, rōděřě, rōsi, rōsūm (cum denoting completeness, *rodo gnaw*), gnaw to pieces, gnaw; CORRODE.

Crassus, M. Licinius Crassus, a celebrated Roman.

crěmo, āřě, āvi, ātūm, burn. CREMATION.

creo, āřě, āvi, ātūm, CREATE, elect, choose, appoint. CREATION.

crūs, crūrīs, n., leg.

cultūs, ūs, m. (*colo cultivate*), CULTURE, civilization.

cūm, prep. w. abl., with, together with.

cūpīdītās, ātis, f. (*cupīdus desirous*), desire, wish, longing; eagerness, enthusiasm; CUPIDITY.

cūpīdūs, ā, ūm, (*cupio desire*), desirous, fond.

cūpio, cūpěřě, cūpīvi and cūpii, **cupitūm**, desire.

cūr, interrog. adv., why? wherefore?

cūrā, ae, f. (*quaero seek*), care.

Cūrēs, Cūrīūm, f. pl., chief town of the Sabines.

cūrīā, ae, f., curia or ward; senate-house.

Curiātīi, ōrūm, m. pl., the name of an Alban tribe. Three brothers belonging to this tribe fought with the Horatii.

cūro, āřě, āvi, ātūm (*cura care*), care for, attend to, cause something to be done. CURATE.

custōs, custōdis, m. and f., guard, watch. CUSTODIAN.

D.

damno, ārē, āvi, atum (damnum penalty), CONDEMN.

dē, prep. w. abl., down from, from; of; about, concerning; for.

dēā, ae, f. [see 11], goddess.

dēbeo, ērē, uī, itum (de from, habeo have), owe.

dē-cēdo, cēdērē, cessī, cessum (de away, cedo go), go away, depart, retire.

dē-certo, ārē, āvi, atum (de intensive, certo contend), fight, contend.

dēcīmūs, ā, ūm (decem ten), tenth.

dē-cīpio, cīpērē, cēpi, ceptum (de intensive, capio ensnare), DECEIVE. DECEPTION.

declāro, ārē, āvi, atum, show, DECLARE.

dē-dūco, dūcērē, duxī, ductum (de down, away, duco lead), lead down or away, withdraw, lead. DEDUCE, DEDUCT, etc.

dē-fātigo, ārē, āvi, atum (de denoting completeness, fātigo weary), weary completely, fatigue.

dē-fendo, fendērē, fendī, fensum, DEFEND.

dēformītās, ātis, f., DEFORMITY, ugliness.

deinde, adv., then, after that.

dē-jicio, jicērē, jēcī, jectum (de down, jacio throw), throw or cast down. DEJECTION.

dēlectūs, ā, ūm (deligo choose), chosen.

dēleo, dēlērē, dēlēvi, dēlētum destroy. DELETERIOUS.

dē-libēro, ārē, āvi, atum (de denoting completeness, libro weigh in one's mind), weigh well in mind, DELIBERATE. DELIBERATION.

dē-ligo, ligērē, lēgi, lectum (de apart, lego gather), select, choose.

Dēmārātūs, ī, m., a Corinthian, father of Tarquinius Priscus.

dē-mitto, mittērē, misi, missum (de down, mitto let go), let go down; capite demisso, with bowed head.

dē-monstro, ārē, āvi, atum (de intensive, monstro show), point out, show, DEMONSTRATE; declare. DEMONSTRATION.

dēnī, ae, ā, num. adj. pl., ten each.

dēniquē, adv., at last, finally.

dens, dentīs, m., tooth. DENTAL.

dē-pōno, pōnērē, pōsuī, pōsitum (de down, pono put), put down, lay aside, get rid of. DEPOSIT, DEPONENT.

de-scendo, scendērē, scendī, scensum (de down, scando go), DESCEND.

de-scribo, scribērē, scripsi, scriptum, DESCRIBE; divide. DESCRIPTION.

dē-signo, ārē, āvi, atum (de intensive, signo mark), DESIGNATE, describe, mean.

de-spēro, ārē, āvi, atum (de denoting negation, spero hope) despair. DESPERATION.

de-stītuō, stītuērē, stītuī, stītū-

tūm (de away, statuo put), forsake, abandon. DESTITUTE, DESTITUTION.

dē-sūm, de-essē, dē-fui (de away, sum be), be wanting.

dētēriōr, dētēriūs [see 85], worse.

dētrimentūm, ī, n. (detero fr. de away, tero rub), loss; damage, injury; DETRIMENT. DETRIMENTAL.

deūs, ī, m. [see 20], god; DEITY.

dē-veho, vehērē, vexī, vectūm (de away, veho carry), carry away, bring.

dē-voro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (de down, voro swallow), DEVOUR, eat up.

dextēr, dextrā, dextrūm, right; dextrā (sc. manu hand), on the right. DEXTEROUS.

dīco, dīcērē, dīxī, dictūm, say, tell, speak; appoint; call, name; causam dīcēre, to plead one's cause. DICTUM.

dīēs, dīēī, m., day.

dif-fēro, dif-ferrē, dis-tūli, dif-lātūm (dis in different directions, fero carry), carry different ways; put off; DIFFER.

difficilis, ē (dis negative, facilis easy), DIFFICULT; impracticable.

dignitās, ātis, f. (dignus worthy), DIGNITY, rank; honor, office.

dignūs, ā, ūm, worthy. DIGNIFY.

dī-mitto, mittērē, misī, missūm (dis hither and thither, mitto send), DISMISS.

dī-ro, ruērē, ruī, rūtūm (dis asunder, ruo hurl down), destroy; overthrow; raze.

dīs, m. and f.; dītē, n.; gen. dītīs [dītīōr, dītissimūs], rich.

dis-cēdo, cēdērē, cessī, cessūm (dis away, cedo go), go away, depart, leave.

dissīdiūm, ī, n. (dissideo fr. dis apart, sedeo sit), dissension.

dis-trībuo, trībuērē, trībuī, trī-būtūm (dis among several, tribuo give), DISTRIBUTE, divide.

dītio, dītīōnīs, f., dominion, power.

dīū, dīūtīūs, dīūtissimē, adv., a long time.

dīvēs, gen. dīvītīs, adj., rich.

Divīco, ōnīs, m., a distinguished man among the Helvetii.

dī-vīdo, vīdērē, vīsī, vīsūm (dis asunder, root vid separate), DIVIDE; separate. DIVISION.

Divitiācūs, ī, m., a chief of the Aedui.

dīvītiaē, ārūm, f. pl. (dives rich), riches, wealth.

do, dārē, dēdī, dātūm, give.

dōceo, dōcērē, dōcuī, doctūm teach, instruct; inform. DOCTOR.

dōlōr, dōlōrīs, m. (doleo feel pain), grief, sorrow, trouble. DOLOROUS.

dōlūs, ī, m., fraud, deceit, strata-gem.

dōmo, ārē, dōmuī, dōmītūm, subdue, conquer.

dōmūs, ūs and ī [see 97], house; dōmī, at home; dōmūm, home,

homeward; **dōmō**, from home.

DOME.

dubitatio, **ōnīs**, f. (dubitō waver in opinion), doubt, hesitation.

dūbiūs, **ā**, **ūm**, doubtful. **DUBIOUS.**

dūcentī, **ae**, **ā**, num. adj. pl. (duo two, centum hundred), two hundred.

dūco, **dūcērē**, **dūxī**, **ductūm**, lead, draw; suppose, consider; put off. **DUCT**, **AQUEDUCT.**

dulcis, **dulcē**, sweet, pleasant. **DULCET.**

dum, conj., while, as long as; until.

Dumnōrix, **Dumnōrigīs**, m, one of the Aedui.

duō, **ae**, **ō**, num. adj. [see 108], two.

dux, **dūcīs**, m. and f., leader, guide; commander, general.

E.

ēdūco, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (edūco bring up a child), **EDUCATE.**

EDUCATION.

ē-dūco, **dūcērē**, **dūxī**, **ductūm** (ex out, duco lead), lead out, lead forth. **EDUCE**, **EDUCTION.**

effēmīno, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (ex denoting change of nature, femina woman), enervate. **EF-FEMINATE.**

ef-ficio, **fīcērē**, **fēcī**, **fectūm** (ex out, facio make), **EFFECT**, accomplish.

ef-fundo, **fundērē**, **fūdī**, **fūsūm**

(ex out, fundo pour), pour out, overflow. **EFFUSION.**

Egēriā, **ae**, f., a nymph, celebrated in Roman mythology as the wife and instructress of Numa.

ēgō, pers. pron. [see 112], I.

ē-grēdior, **grēdī**, **gressūs sūm** (ex out, gradior go), go out, depart. **EGRESS.**

ē-lābor, **lābī**, **lapsūs sūm** (ex out, labor slip), glide away, escape. **ELAPSE.**

ē-mīneo, **mīnērē**, **mīnuī** (ex out, mineo jut), rise above; appear. **EMINENT.**

ēmo, **ēmērē**, **ēmī**, **emptūm**, buy.

ēnim, conj., for.

ē-nuncio, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (ex out of a place, nuncio carry a report), divulge, report.

eō, **īrē**, **īvī**, **ītūm** [see 126], go.

eō, adv., to that place, thither, there; **eō** — **quō**, the — the.

ēquēs, **ēquītīs**, m. (equus horse, eo go), rider, horseman; cavalryman; pl., cavalry.

ēquestēr, **trīs**, **trē** (eques horseman), of horsemen, of cavalry. **EQUESTRIAN.**

ēquītātūs, **ūs**, m. (equito to be a horseman), cavalry.

ēquūs, **ī**, m., horse.

ē-rīpio, **rīpērē**, **rīpuī**, **reptūm** (ex out, rapio tear), tear out or from, take from.

ēt, conj., and, even; **ēt** — **ēt**, both — and.

ētiām, conj. (et-jam), and also, also, even.

et-si, conj., *even if, although*.

Etrūriā, ae, f., a country of Italy, modern Tuscany.

ē-vertō, **vertērē**, **verti**, **versūm** (ex out, *verto turn*), *turn out; overturn, destroy*.

ē-volo, **āre**, **āvi**, **ātūm** (ex out, *volo fly*), *fly out, fly away*.

ex, **ē**, prep. w. abl. [see LN. IV., VY., 1], *out of, from among; from; of*.

exemplūm, **i**, n. (**exīmo** fr. **ex** out, *emo take*), **EXAMPLE**.

ex-eo, **irē**, **ii**, **itūm** (ex out, *eo go*), *go out, go forth, depart; pass., be gone*.

exercitatio, **ōnis**, f. (**exercito** to exercise), *practice*.

exercitūs, **ūs**, m. (**exerceo** exercise), *army*. See **agmen**.

ex-igo, **igērē**, **ēgi**, **actūm** (ex out, *ago drive*), *drive out, lead out, spend; aestas exacta est, the summer is gone*. **EXACTION**.

existīmo, **ārē**, **āvi**, **ātūm**, *think, suppose; believe, imagine*.

exītiūm, **i**, n. (**exeo** go out), *destruction, ruin*.

ex-oro, **ārē**, **āvi**, **ātūm** (ex effectually, *oro entreat*), *move by entreaty; obtain by entreaty*.

expēditūs, **ā**, **ūm** (**expedio** fr. ex away from, *pes foot*), *unincumbered, passable*. **EXPEDITIOUS**.

ex-plīco, **ārē**, **āvi**, **ātūm** (ex out, *plico fold*), *unfold, explain, spread*. **EXPLICATION**.

explōrātōr, **ōris**, m. (**explōro** explore), *spy, scout*.

ex-pugno, **ārē**, **āvi**, **ātūm** (ex effectually, *pugno fight*), *take by assault; storm, capture*.

ex-specto, **ārē**, **āvi**, **ātūm** (ex very much, *specto look for*), **EXPECT**, *long for; wait*. **EXPECTATION**.

extrā, prep. w. acc., *without, beyond*.

ex-trāho, **trāhērē**, **traxi**, **tractūm** (ex out, *traho draw*), *draw out, EXTRACT*. **EXTRACTION**.

extrēmūs, **ā**, **ūm** [see **S5**], *furthest, most distant*, **EXTREME**.

ex-ūro, **ūrērē**, **ussī**, **ustūm** (ex entirely, *uro burn*), *burn up*.

F.

fābūlā, ae, f. (**fari** to speak), *story*, **FABLE**.

fācilē, **fāciliūs**, **fācillīmē**, adv. (**facilis** easy), *easily, readily, without difficulty*.

fāciliſ, **fācilē** (**facio** do, *ilis denoting capability*), *easy, practicable*. **FACILE**.

fācio, **fācērē**, **fēcī**, **factūm**, *do, make; incite, furnish; iter facere, to march, to journey*.

factio, **factiōnis**, f. (**facio** take part with one), **FACTION**, *political party*.

factūm, **i**, n. (**facio** do), *deed, act*.

fācultās, **ātis**, f. (**facilis** which see), *ability, opportunity*. **FACULTY**.

fāmilīā, ae, f. (*famulus servant*),
household, FAMILY.

fāmilīārītās, ātis, f. (*familiāris intimate*), intimacy, friendship,
FAMILIARITY.

fāmūlā, ae, f., maid, maid-ser-
vant.

fauce, abl., f. sing., throat; **fau-
cēs**, faucium, f. pl., throat.

Faustūlūs, ī, m., the shepherd
by whom Romulus and Remus
were brought up.

fāveo, **fāvērē**, **fāvī**, **fautūm**, fa-
vor, show favor.

fēlēs and **fēlīs**, **fēlīs**, f., cat.
FELINE.

fēlicītēr, adv. (*felix happy*), hap-
pily, successfully.

fēlix, gen. **fēlicīs**, adj (*feo pro-
duce*), happy, fortunate. FE-
LICITOUS.

fēmīnā, ae, f., female, woman.
FEMININE.

fērē, adv., almost, nearly.

fēro, **ferrē**, **tūlī**, **lātūm**, bear,
bring, carry; endure.

fērūs, ā, ūm, wild, uncultivated;
fērā, ae, f., wild beast.

ferrūm, ī, n., iron; sword.

festūm, ī, n., FEAST.

fīdēs, **fīdēī**, f. (*fido trust*), faith,
confidence; pledge, promise;
protection. FIDELITY.

filiā, ae, f. [see 11], daughter.

filiūs, ī, m., son.

finio, **finīrē**, **finīvī**, **finītūm**
(*finis end*), end, FINISH.

finīs, **finīs**, m., end, limit, boun-
dary; pl., territory. FINAL.

finītīmūs, ā, ūm (*finis boun-
dary*), neighboring; **finītīmī**,
ōrūm, m. pl., neighbors.

fio, **fīērī**, **factūs sūm** [see 126],
be made; become; occur, hap-
pen.

firmītēr, adv. (*firmus firm*), firm-
ly, securely.

fīgīto, ārē, āvī, ātūm, demand.

flammā, ae, f., FLAME.

fleo, **fīērē**, **fīēvī**, **fīētūm**, weep.

fleas, gen. **fientīs**, weeping.

flos, **florīs**, m., flower. FLORAL.

fūmēn, **fūmīnīs**, n. (*fluo flow*),
river.

fluo, **fluērē**, **fluxī**, **fluxūm**, flow.

FLUENT, FLUENCY.

fōdio, **fōdērē**, **fōdī**, **fossūm**,
dig. FOSSIL.

foedūs, **foedērīs**, n., league,
treaty. FEDERAL.

formīdo, **formīdīnīs**, f., fear,
terror.

formōsītās, ātis, f., beauty.

fortassē, adv. (*fors chance*), per-
haps.

fortē, adv. (*fors chance*), acci-
dentally, by chance.

fortīs, **fortē**, brave, bold, coura-
geous, valiant; strong.

fortītēr, **fortiūs**, **fortissīmē**, adv.
(*fortis brave*), bravely, valiantly.

fortūnā, ae, f., FORTUNE.

fōrūm, ī, n., market-place; FO-
RUM; court of justice.

fossā, ae, f. (*fodio dig*), ditch,
trench.

frātēr, **frātrīs**, m., brother. FRA-
TERNAL.

frigūs, frigōrīs, n., *cold, frost.*
frūmentāriūs, ā, ūm (*frumen-*
tum corn), *of corn; res fru-*
mentaria, supplies.

frūmentū, i, n., *corn, grain.*
fruor, fruī, fructūs sūm, *enjoy*
[see 104].

fūgā, ae, f., *flight.*

fūgio, fūgērē, fūgī, fūgītūm, *flee;*
escape. FUGITIVE.

fulmēn, fulmīnīs, n. (*fulgeo*
flush), *thunder-bolt, lightning.*
FULMINATE.

fūnūs, fūnērīs, n., *funeral proces-*
sion, burial, FUNERAL.

G.

Gābīniūs, i, m., *Aulus Gabinius,*
a Roman consul.

Galliā, ae, f., *Gaul; it embraced*
modern France, Belgium, that
part of the Netherlands south
of the Rhine, the provinces of
Germany west of the Rhine,
and a large part of Switzer-
land; all this was known as
Gallia ulterior, farther Gaul,
and as Gallia transalpina,
Gaul across the Alps, i. e. from
Rome: the northern part of
modern Italy was known as
Gallia citerior, hither Gaul,
and as Gallia cisalpina, Gaul
this side the Alps, i. e. towards
Rome.

gallīnā, ae, f., *hen.*

Gallūs, i, m., *a Gaul.*

Garumnā, ae, f., *a river of Gaul,*
the Garonne.

gēmīnūs, ā, ūm, double; gemīni
fili, twin-sons.

gēnēr, gēnērī, m., *son-in-law.*

Gēnāvā, ae, f., *a town of the Al-*
lobroges, on Lake Lemannus,
modern GENEVA.

gens, gentīs, f. (gigno beget),
nation, tribe. GENTILE.

gēnūs, gēnērīs, n., *birth, kind*
race.

Germānī, ōrum, m. pl., *THE*
GERMANS.

gēro, gērērē, gessī, gestūm, *bear.*
carry; carry on, wage; pass.
happen, take place.

gigno, gignērē, gēnuī, gēnītūm,
beget; bear; pass., be born.

glōriā, ae, f., *GLORY, renown.*

glōrior, āri, ātūs sūm (gloria
glory), boast, GLORY.

grādūs, ūs, m. (gradior to step),
step, stair. GRADE.

Graecūs, ā, ūm, GRECIAN,
GREEK.

grātiā, ae, f. (gratus beloved,
dear), favor; influence, popu-
larity; GRACE: pl., thanks.

grātūlor, āri, ātūs sūm, CON-
GRATULATE.

grāvīs, grāvē, heavy, burden-
some; GRIEVOUS, painful, se-
vere. GRIEF.

grāvītēr, grāviūs, grāvissīmē,
adv. (gravis heavy), heavily;
grievously, severely.

grūs, gruīs, m. and f., *crane (a*
bird).

H.

hābeo, ārē, uī, Itūm, HAVE, hold; regard, consider; deliver.

Harfidēs, ūm, m. pl., a people of Southern Germany.

hastā, ae, f., spear, lance.

haud, adv., not at all, by no means.

haedūs and **hoedūs, ī**, m., kid, a young goat.

Helvētīī, ōrūm, m. pl., an ancient people occupying a large part of the country now called Switzerland.

Helvētīūs, ā, ūm, of the Helvetii.

herbīdūs, ā, ūm (herba grass), grassy.

hībernā, ōrūm, n. pl. (hiems winter), winter-quarters; [properly an adjective with **castra** understood.] HIBERNATE.

hīc, haec, hōc, this; pl., these [see 113].

hīc, adv. (hic this), here, in this place.

hiēmo, ārē, āvī, ātūm (hiems winter), pass the winter.

hīnc, adv. (hic this), hence, from this place.

Hispaniā, ae, f., SPAIN.

hōdiē, adv. (contracted fr. **hoc** and **die**, on this day), to-day.

hōmō, hōmīnīs, m. and f., human being, person, man. [See LN. XXV., NOTE 1.]

hōnōr, hōnōrīs, m., HONOR.

hōrā, ae, f., HOUR.

Horātīī, ōrum, m. pl., three Ro-

man brothers who fought against the Curiatii.

hortor, āri, ātīs sūm, EXHORT, urge. HORTATORY.

hospitūm, ī, n. (hospes guest), HOSPITALITY. HOSPITAL, HOSPITABLE.

hostīs, hostīs, m. and f., enemy, public enemy; [**inimicus** is a personal enemy.] HOSTILE.

hīc, adv. (hic this), hither, to this place.

hūmānītās, ātīs, f. (humanus of or belonging to man), HUMANITY, refinement, culture.

I.

ibī, adv. (is), there, in that place, then.

īco, īcērē, īcī, īctūm, strike; **foedus īcēre**, to ratify or make a treaty. ICTUS.

īdem, eādem, īdem (is and dem. suffix dem), the same [see 113].

īdōneūs, ā, ūm, fit, suitable.

īgītūr, conj., therefore.

īgnīs, īs, m., fire.

illē, illā, illū, that, he; pl., those.

īmērītūs, ā, ūm (in negative, **merītus** deserving), not deserving; not deserved.

īmortālīs, īmortāle (in negative, **mortālīs** mortal), IMMORTAL.

īmortālītās, ātīs, f. (īmortālīs immortal), IMMORTALITY.

īmpēdīmentūm, ī, n. (impedio fr. in in the way of, **pedes** feet),

hindrance, pl., *baggage* of an army, including beasts of burden and their drivers; [*sarcinae* are packs carried by the soldiers.] IMPEDIMENT.

im-pendeo, **pendere**, no perf. nor sup. (in *over*, *pendeo hang*), *overhang*; IMPEND.

impērātōr, **ōrīs**, m. (*impero command*), *commander-in-chief*, *general*.

impēritūs, **ā**, **ūm** (in *negative*, *peritus skilled*), *unskilled*, *inexperienced*.

impēriūm, **ī**, n. (*impero command*), *command*; *government*; EMPIRE, *supreme power*.

impēro, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (in *upon*, *paro put*), *give orders*, *order*; *command*; *rule*.

impētūs, **ūs**, m., *attack*, *assault*. IMPETUS.

im-plōro, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm**, *beseech*, *entreat*, IMPLORE.

im-pōno, **pōnērē**, **pōsuī**, **pōsītūm** (in *upon*, *pono place*), *place upon*; *levy upon*. IMPOSE, IMPOSITION.

im-porto, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (in *into*, *porto bring*), *bring into*, *IMPORT*.

in, prep. w. acc and abl.; w. acc., *into*, *to*, *towards*, *against*; w. abl., *in*, *on*, *upon*, *among*.

inānīs, **inānē**, *empty*; *vain*, *ineffectual*.

incendo, **incendērē**, **incendī**, **incensūm**, *set on fire*, *burn*. INCENDIARY.

inchoo, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm**, *begin*.

in-cīdo, **cīdērē**, **cīdī** (in *into*, *cado fall*), *fall into or upon*; *chance to meet with*. INCIDENT, INCIDENTAL.

in-cīto, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (in *with-out additional force*, *cito put in quick motion*), *instigate*, *encourage*; INCITE.

in-cōlo, **cōlērē**, **cōluī**, **cultūm** (in *in*, *colo dwell*), *inhabit*, *dwell*.

incolūmīs, **ē**, *unhurt*, *safe*.

incommōdūm, **ī**, (*incommōdus fr. in negative*, *commōdus convenient*), *inconvenience*, *misfortune*, *defeat*.

incrēdībīlīs, **ē** (in *negative*, *credo believe*, *bilis denoting capability*), INCREDIBLE; *extraordinary*.

incursio, **ōnīs**, f. (*incurro fr. in into*, *against*; *curro run*), *attack*; INCURSION.

in-cūso, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (in *against*, *causa cause*), *censure*, *blame*.

in-dīco, **dīcērē**, **dixī**, **dictūm** (in *among*, *dico speak*), *declare*, *proclaim*.

indignūs, **ā**, **ūm** (in *negative*, *dignus worthy*), *unworthy*.

indōlēs, **īs**, f., *disposition*, *nature*.

in-dūco, **dūcērē**, **dūxī**, **ductūm** (in *into*, *duco lead*), *lead into*; INDUCE.

indulgeo, **indulgērē**, **indulsī**, **indultūm**, *favor*, *show favor*; INDULGE.

- in-duo, duōrē, duī, dūtūm**, put on, dress; clothe.
- Inermis, ō** (in negative, arma arms), unarmed; defenceless.
- inferiōr, inferiūs, lower.** INFERIOR [see 85].
- in-fēro, in-ferē, in-tūlī, illātūm** (in into, upon, fero bring), bring into or upon, make upon. INFER, INFERENCE.
- in-fluo, fluōrē, fluxī, fluxūm** (in into, fluo flow), flow into, empty. INFLUENCE, INFLUX.
- in-frendeo, frendērē, gnash** with the teeth.
- ingens, gen. ingentis, vast, enormous, large.**
- in-haereo, haerērē, haesī, haesūm** (in to, in; haereo stick), stick or cleave to or in.
- in-hio, ārē, āvī, ātūm** (in for, hio gape), gape for, desire.
- Inimicus, ā, ūm** (in negative, amicus friendly), unfriendly, hostile; INIMICAL. See **hostis**.
- inītiūm, ī, n.** (ineo fr. in upon, eo enter), beginning. INITIAL.
- in-jicio, jicērē, jēcī, jectūm** (in into, jacio throw), throw into; inspire, infuse. INJECT.
- injūriā, ae, f.** (injurius fr. in negative, jus right), INJURY, wrong; injustice, damage, insult.
- in-nascor, nascī, natūs sūm** (in in, nascor be born), spring up in.
- inōpiā, ae, f.** (inōpes fr. in negative, opes resources), want, scarcity.
- inquam and inquo**, defective verb, say.
- insidiae, ārūm, f. pl.**, treachery, deceit. INSIDIOUS.
- insignis, insignē** (in upon, signum mark), remarkable, extraordinary; insignē, is, n., sign.
- in-stituo, stituerē, stitui, stitūtūm**, appoint, INSTITUTE; train up, instruct.
- institūtūm, ī, n.**, custom; INSTITUTION.
- in-struo, struerē, struxī, structūm** (in without additional force, struo arrange), arrange, form, draw up. INSTRUCT, INSTRUCTIVE, INSTRUCTION.
- intel-ligo (lēgo), ligērē, lexī, lectūm** (inter between, lego choose), understand, know. INTELLIGENT.
- intēr, prep. w. acc.**, between, among.
- inter-cēdo, cēdērē, cessī, cessūm** (inter between, cedo go), intervene. INTERCEDE, INTERCESSION.
- inter-cīpio, cīpērē, cēpī, ceptūm** (inter between, capio take), usurp; take away fraudulently; INTERCEPT.
- inter-ficio, ficērē, fēcī, fectūm** (inter between, facio make), kill, slay.
- inter-īmo, īmērē, ēmī, emptūm**, kill, put to death.
- internēcio, ōnis, f.** (internēco fr. inter completely, neco kill), slaughter.

interregnum, I, n. (*inter between, regnum reign*), INTERREGNUM.
inter-sūm, essē, fui (*inter between, sum be*), *be between, intervene.*

intervallum, I, n. (*inter between, vallum rampart*), INTERVAL, *distance.*

intro, ārē, āvī, ātūm, enter.

in-tueor, tuērī, tuītīs sūm (*in upon, at; tueor look*), *look at or upon.*

intūs, adv., within.

invidiā, ae, f. (*invideo look askance at*), ENVY, *hatred.*

invītūs, ā, ūm, unwilling; sē in-vīto, against his will.

ipsē, ipsā, ipsūm [see 113], *self; himself, herself, itself; very; ipse rex, the very king.*

irrētio, Irē, Ivī, Itūm (*in in, rete net*), *entangle, ensnare.*

ir-rīdeo, rīdērē, rīsī, rīsūm (*in at, rideo laugh*), *laugh at, deride.*

irrito, ārē, āvī, ātūm, provoke, incite, IRRITATE. IRRITATION.

is, eā, Id, he, her, it; this; that [see 113].

Isocrātēs, Is, m., a celebrated Greek orator and rhetorician.

Itā, adv. (is), so, thus, in this manner, as follows.

Itāliā, ae, f., ITALY.

Itālūs, ā, ūm, Italian.

itā-quē, conj., and so, accordingly, therefore.

Itēm, adv. (is), in like manner, likewise.

Itēr, Itinērīs, n. (eo go), journey;

march; way, road, route; iter facere, to march. ITINERANT. Itērūm, adv. (is), again, a second time.

J.

jāceo, ārē, uī, jācītūm, lie.

jācio, jācērē, jēcī, jactūm, *throw, hurl, cast.*

jām, adv., now, already.

Jāniculūm, I, n., a hill across the Tiber from Rome.

jūbeo, jūbērē, jussī, jussūm, *command, order.*

jūdicium, I, n., (judex judge), judgment; trial; sentence; decision. JUDICIAL.

jūdico, ārē, āvī, ātūm (jus law, dico point out), JUDGE; determine, conclude; think. ADJUDICATE.

jūgūm, I, n. (jungo join), yoke; ridge, summū: in war a frame made of two upright spears supporting a third in a horizontal position, under which a conquered army was made to pass in token of subjection.

jūmentūm, I, n., beast of burden as a horse or an ox.

Juppīter and Jūpīter, Jōvis, m., son of Saturn, father of gods and king of men.

Jūrā, ae, m., the Jura, a chain of mountains extending from the Rhine to the Rhone and forming the western boundary of Switzerland.

jūs, jūris, n., right, law. JURIST.
jūsjurandūm, jūrisjurandī, n.,
oath [see 110].
jussū, m. abl. (jubeo command),
by command.
justūs, ā, ūm (jus law, suffix tus
denoting fulness), JUST, right.
jūvo, jūvārē, jūvī, jūtūm, help,
aid, assist. AD-JUTANT.

L.

L., abbreviation of *Lucius*, a Roman praenomen.
Lābiēntis, I m., one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war.
lābōr, lābōris, m., LABOR, toil.
lacrimā, ae, f., tear.
lācūs, ūs, m., LAKE.
laetor, ārī, ātūs sūm (laetus
joyful), rejoice, exult.
laetūs, ā, ūm, joyful.
lānio, ārē, āvī, ātūm, tear in
pieces.
lāpis, lāpīdis, m., stone. LAPID-
ARY.
lāqueūs, I, m., noose, snare.
Lārentiā, ae, f. See Acca.
largitio, ōnis, f. (largior give
bountifully), liberality.
lātē, adv. (latus broad), widely,
extensively.
Lātīnūs, I, m., an ancient king of the Laurentes, a people of Italy.
latro, latrōnis, m., robber.
latro, ārē, āvī, ātūm, bark, bark
at.
lātūs, lātōris, n., side; flank.
LATERAL.

lātūs, ā, ūm, broad, wide; large,
spacious. LATITUDE.
Lāvīniā, ae, f., daughter of Latinus and second wife of Aenēas.
Lāvīniūm, I, n., a city in Italy built by Aenēas.
lēgātio, ōnis, f. (lego send on
an embassy), embassy. LEGA-
TION.
lēgātūs, I, m. (lego send as a rep-
resentative), ambassador, envoy,
LEGATE; lieutenant.
lēgio, lēgiōnis, f. (lego levy),
LEGION, a body of infantry varying in number from 4000 to 6000, and generally accompanied by about 300 cavalymen.
lēgo, lēgērē, lēgī, lectūm,
choose.
Lēmānūs, I, m., Lake Lemān or Geneva in Switzerland.
lēnitas, ātis, f., smoothness.
leo, leōnis, m., LION.
lētālis, ē (letum death; suffix
alis, belonging to), fatal, deadly.
lēvītās, ātis, f. (lēvis smooth),
smoothness.
lēvītās, ātis, f. (lēvis light),
lightness. LEVITY.
lex, lēgis, f., law. LEGAL.
libēr, libērā, libērūm, free.
libērālītās, ātis, f. (liberālis fr-
liber free), LIBERALITY, gen-
erosity.
libērē, libērīūs, adv. (liber free),
freely, unreservedly.
libērī, ōrūm, m. pl., children.
libēro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (liber
free), to free, LIBERATE.

liceor, liceři, licitūs sūm, bid
at an auction.

licēt, licēre, licuit or licitūm
est, it is permitted, allowed; one
may [see 128 and LN. LXIX.,
Examples 2 – 5].

licēt, although.

lingōnēs, ūm, m. pl, a people
in Northeastern Gaul.

linguā, ae, f., tongue; LANGUAGE.
LINGUIST, LINGUAL.

liscūs, i, m., a magistrate among
the Aedui.

litterā and lītērā, ae, f. (lino
besmear), LETTER of the alpha-
bet; pl., letter, epistle. LITERA-
TURE.

locūs, i, m. [pl. loci and loca],
place. LOCAL, LOCALITY.

longē, longiūs, longissimē, adv.
(longus long), **far, by far; often**
used to strengthen superla-
tives.

longissimē, adv., very far.

longitūdo, inīs, f. (longus long),
length. LONGITUDE.

longūs, ā, ūm, long.

loquor, loqui, locūtūs sūm,
speak, talk. LOQUACIOUS.

Lūcius, i, m., a Roman prae-
nomēn.

Lūcrētīā, ae, f., a Roman matron,
wife of Collatinus.

lūdūs, i, m., play, game.

lūpā, ae, f., she-wolf.

lūpūs, i, m., wolf.

lustro, āre, āvī, ātūm, review.

lux, lūcis, f. (luceo shine), light.

lūrā, ae, f., lyre.

M.

M., abbreviation of Marcus, a
Roman praenomen.

MC., abbreviation of Manius, a
Roman praenomen.

māgis, maxīmē, adv., more, rather.

māgistrātūs, ūs, m. (magister
fr. mag-, root of magnus,
signifying to be great), magis-
trate.

magnitūdo, inīs, f. (magnus
great), size, MAGNITUDE.

magnūs, ā, ūm, great, large, big,
mighty. MAGNI-

mājestās ātis, f., MAJESTY,
dignity.

mājōr, mājūs, gen. mājōris
(comp. of magnus), **larger,**
greater, bigger; mājōrēs, ūm,
m. pl., ancestors. MAJOR.

mālē, pējūs, pessimē, adv., bad-
ly, ill, wickedly.

mālē-dīco, dīcēre, dīxi, dictūm
(male ill, dico speak), **speak ill**
of, revile, rail at; [with dat.]
MALEDICTION.

mālēficiūm, i, n. [maleficus do-
ing evil), mischief, damage.

mālēficiūs, ā, ūm (male wicked-
ly, facio do), wicked; mālēfi-
cūs, i, m., an evil-doer.

mālo, mallē, mālui (magis more,
volo be willing), be more willing,
choose rather, prefer [see 125].

mālūs, ā, ūm, bad, wicked, evil,
destructive.

māneo, mănērē, mansi, man-
sūm, stay, RE-MAIN.

mandātūm, *i*, n. (*mando* fr. *manus* *hand*, *do put*; *put in one's hand*), *charge, order, command*.

MANDATE.

mānūs, *ūs*, *f.*, *hand*; *force of soldiers*. **MANUFACTURE**.

Maniūs, *i*, *m.* See **M**.

Marciūs, *i*, *m.*, a Roman name.

Marcūs, *i*, *m.* See **M**.

mārē, *māris*, *n.*, *sea*.

māritūs, *i*, *m.* (*marita* *wife*), *belonging to a wife, husband*.

Mars, **Martīs**, *m.*, son of Jupiter and Juno, and god of war.

MARTIAL.

massā, *ae*, *f.*, *MASS, lump*.

mātēr, *mātris*, *f.*, *MOTHER*; *matron*.

mātrīmōnium, *i*, *n.* (*mater* *mother*), *marriage*; *in matrimonium dare, to give in marriage*; *in matrimonium ducere, to marry*. **MATRIMONY**.

Matrōna, *ae*, *m.*, a river in Gaul, the modern *Marne*.

mātūrē, *adv.* (*matūrus* *ripe*), *early, soon*.

mātūro, *ārē*, *āvī*, *ātūm*, *hasten, make haste*.

mātūrūs, *ā*, *ūm*, *ripe, MATURE*.

mēdiocrītēr, *adv.* (*mediocris* fr. *medius* denoting a *middle state*), *moderately*; *non mediocrīter, exceedingly*.

mēdiūs, *ā*, *ūm*, *in the middle or midst*; *in the middle of*; *middle, central*.

mēl, *mellīs*, *n.*, *honey*. **MELLI-FLUENT**.

mēliōr, **mēliūs**, *gen. mēliōris* (*comp. of bonus*), *better*.

mēmīnī, **mēmīnissē**, *remember* [see 127].

mēmōr, *gen. mēmōris*, *mindful of, mindful*.

mēmōriā, *ae*, *f.* (*memor* *mindful of*), **MEMORY**, *recollection, remembrance*.

mens, **mentīs**, *f.*, *mind*. See **animus**. **MENTAL**.

mensīs, **mensīs**, *m.*, *month*.

mercātōr, *ōris*, *m.* (*mercor* *to trade*), *trader, MERCHANT*.

mercēs, **mercēdīs**, *f.*, *wages, hire, reward, price*.

mēreo, *ērē*, *uī*, *Itūm*, *deserve, acquire*.

mērītūm, *i*, *n.*, *desert. MERIT*.

Messālā, *ae*, *m.*, a Roman name.

mētior, **mētīrī**, **mensūs sūm**, **MEASURE**, *deal out*.

Mettiūs, *i*, *m.*, *Mettius Fufetius*, an Alban general, put to death by Tullus Hostilius.

meūs, *ā*, *ūm*, *my, mine*.

mīlēs, **mīlītīs**, *m.*, *soldier*.

mīlītāris, *ē* (*miles* *soldier, aris* *belonging to*), **MILITARY**; *res mīlītāris, military science*.

millē, *pl. mīlia, mīliūm*, *thousand* [see 108].

milviūs, *i*, *m.*, *kite (a bird)*.

mīnīmē [*parvē*, *mīnūs*, *mīnīmē*], *adv.*, *least, by no means*.

mīnīmūs, *ā*, *ūm*, *least* [see 85].

mīnōr, **mīnūs**, *smaller, less* [see 85]; *minor natu, younger*.

mīnuo, mīnuērē, mīnuī, mīnū-
tūm, DI-MINISH. DIMINUTION.
mīnūs, adv. less. See minime.
mīror, ārī, ātūs sūm, AD-MIRE;
wonder at.
mīrūs, ā, ūm (mīror wonder at),
wonderful.
mīsēr, mīsērā, mīsērūm, wretch-
ed, pitiable, lamentable, MISER-
ABLE.
mitto, mittērē, mīsī, missūm,
send.
moeniā, moeniūm, n. pl., walls
of a city.
mollio, Irē, ivī, Itūm (mollis
soft), soften, subdue.
mōneo, ērē, uī, Itūm, remind;
advise, AD-MONISH.
mons, montīs, m., MOUNTAIN,
MOUNT.
monstro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (mon-
strum a divine omen), show,
point out. DE-MONSTRATE.
morbūs, ī, m., disease. MORBID.
mōrior, mōrī and mōrīrī, mor-
tuūs sūm, die.
mōror, ārī, ātūs sūm, tarry, de-
lay, hinder.
mors, mortīs, f., death. MORTAL.
mōs, mōrīs, m., custom, manner;
usage; pl., character. MORAL.
mōveo, mōvērē, mōvī, mōtūm,
MOVE; excite: castra movēre,
to break up camp.
mūliēr, mūliērīs, f., roman.
multitūdo, Inīs, f. (multus
much), MULTITUDE.
multūs, ā, ūm, much, many a;
pl. many. MULTI-PLY.

mūnio, Irē, ivī, Itūm (moenia
wall, rampart), fortify.
mūnītio, ōnīs, f. (munio fortify),
fortification. MUNITION.
mūnūs, mūnērīs, n., gift, reward.
RE-MUNER-ATE.
mūs, mūrīs, m., mouse.
musculūs, m. (mus), a little
mouse.

N.

nām, conj., for.
nascor, nascī, nātūs sūm, be
born. NASCENT.
nātū, abl. sing. m., by birth; mi-
nor natu, younger.
nātūrā, ae, f. (nascor be born),
NATURE.
nātūs, ā, ūm (nascor be born),
old.
nāvīs, nāvīs, f., ship. NAV-AL,
NAVI-GATE.
nē, adv., not; conj., that not; that.
nē, interrog. particle; is appended
to first word of the question and
asks for information.
nēc. See nēquē.
nēcō, ārē, āvī, ātūm, kill, put to
death.
nēgo, ārē, āvī, ātūm, deny, re-
fuse. NEGATION.
nēgōtiūm, ī, n. (nec not, otium
leisure), business; quid negō
ti? what business? NEGOTI-
ATE.
nēmō, nēmīnīs, m. and f. (ne
not, homo a man), no one, no-
body.

něpōs, něpōtīs, m., grandson.

NEPOTISM.

Neptūnūs, I, m., Neptune, god of the sea.

něquāquām, adv., by no means.

něquě, něc, conj., and not; něquě — něquě, neither — nor.

nervūs, I, m., NERVE, vigor, energy.

nescio, Irě, Ivī and iI, Itūm (ne not, scio know), not know.

neutēr, neutrā, neutrūm (ne not, uter one or the other), neither [see 24]. NEUTER.

nīhīl, n. indecl., nothing.

nīhīlō mīnūs, adv., none the less, nevertheless.

nīhīlūm, I, n., nothing.

nīsī, conj. (ne not, si if), if not, unless, except.

nītor, nītī, nīsūs or nixus sūm, strive, endeavor.

nōbīlis, nōbīlē (nosco know, bilis denoting capability), well known, NOBLE, of high rank.

nōbīlītās, ātis, f. (nobīlis noble), NOBILITY.

nōlo, nollě, nōluī (non not, volo willing), be unwilling.

nōmēn, nōmīnis, n., NAME.

nōn, adv., not.

nonně, interrog. particle, expects the answer yes.

non-nullūs, ā, ūm, some one; nonnullī, ōrūm, m. pl., several persons.

Norēiā, ae, f., a town in Noricum.

Noricūs, ā, ūm, of Noricum, a

country lying between the Upper Danube and Eastern Alps.

nōs, pers. pron., we [see 112].

nostēr, nostrā, nostrūm, our, ours.

nōto, ārě, āvī, ātūm (nota, a mark), mark. NOTE, NOTATION.

Noviodūnūm, I, n., the name of several cities in Gaul.

nōvūs, ā, ūm, new, strange; recent, fresh; novae res, revolution; agmen novissimum, the rear. NOVEL.

nox, noctīs, f., night.

nūbēs, nūbīs, f., cloud.

nūbo, nūbērě, nupsī, nuptūm, veil herself for the bridegroom, marry [of a bride]. NUPTIAL.

nūdūs, ā, ūm, naked, bare; NUDE.

nullūs, ā, ūm (ne not, ullus any one), no, none, not any one.

nūm, whether; in direct questions to be omitted in translation.

Nūma, ae, m., Numa Pompilius, the second king of Rome.

nūmērūs, I, m., NUMBER.

Nūmītōr, ōrīs, m., father of Rhea Silvia.

nunc, adv., now.

nuncio, ārě, āvī, ātūm (nuncius messenger), AN-NOUNCE, report.

nuncūpo, ārě, āvī, ātūm, to name.

nunquām and numquām, adv. (ne not, unquam ever), never.

nūpěr, adv. (novus new), newly, recently.

nutrio, Irě, Ivī, Itūm, nourish.

NUTRITION, NUTRIMENT.

nympĥă, ae, f., a *nympĥ*; the nymphs were demi-goddesses inhabiting the sea, rivers, fountains, woods, trees, and mountains.

O.

ob, prep. w. acc., *on account of, for*.

obĕdio, Irĕ, Ivĭ, Itŭm (ob without any additional force, audio listen to), *listen to, obey; be subject to. OBEDIENT.*

ob-eo, Irĕ, Ivĭ and iĭ, Itŭm (ob towards, eo go), *die.*

ob-erro, ārĕ, āvĭ, ātŭm (ob about, erro wander), *wander about, wander.*

ob-jicio, jĭcĕrĕ, jĕcĭ, jectŭm (ob before, at; jacio throw), *throw before, at, or against; throw up. OBJECT, OBJECTION.*

oblīviscor, oblīviscĭ, oblītŭs sŭm, *forget.*

ob-ruo, ruĕrĕ, ruĭ, rŭtŭm (ob without additional force, ruo cast down with violence), *overwhelm; cover.*

ob-secro, ārĕ, āvĭ, ātŭm (ob on account of, sacra sacrifices), *beseech, implore.*

obsĕs, obsĭdĭs, m. (obsideo stay), *hostage.*

ob-testor, ārĭ, ātŭs sŭm (ob with no additional force, testor bear witness), *conjure, beseech.*

ob-tĭneo, tĭnĕrĕ, tĭnuĭ, tentŭm (ob with no additional force, teneo hold), *hold, OBTAIN, possess.*

obviām, adv., *in the way; obviam Irĕ or fiĕrĭ, to meet.*

occāsŭs, ŭs, m. (occĭdo fall), *going down; solis occāsu, at sunset.*

oc-cĭdo, cĭdĕrĕ, cĭdĭ, cĭsŭm (ob against, caedo cut, strike), *kill, slay.*

oc-culto, ārĕ, āvĭ, ātŭm, *hide, conceal. OCCULT.*

oc-cŭpo, ārĕ, āvĭ, ātŭm (ob with no additional force, capio take), *seize, take possession of, OCCUPY. OCCUPATION.*

oc-curro, currĕrĕ, cŭcurrĭ and currĭ, cursŭm (ob towards, curro run), *meet. OCCUR, OCCURRENCE.*

Oceānŭs, I, m., OCEAN.

Ocĕlŭm, I, n, a town in the western part of Cisalpine Gaul.

octāvŭs, ā, ŭm, *eighth. OCTAVE.*

octō-dĕcĭm, num. adj., *eighteen.*

octō-gintā, num. adj., *eighty.*

ocŭlŭs, I, m., *eye. OCULIST.*

ōdĭ, ōdissĕ, *hate* [see 127].

of-fendo, fendĕrĕ, fendĭ, fensŭm, *OFFEND, wound. OFFENCE.*

of-fĕro, of-fĕrrĕ, ob-tŭllĭ, ob-lātŭm (ob towards, fero bring), *OFFER, present.*

offĭcium, I, n. (opes aid, facio render), *service, duty; obedience, allegiance. OFFICE.*

omnīnō, adv. (*omnis all*), *altogether, at all*.

omnis, omnē, *all, every, the whole*.

OMNI-SCIENCE, OMNI-POTENT, OMNI-PRESENT.

ōnūs, ōnērīs, n., *load, burden; weight; size*. **ONEROUS.**

ōpīs, ōpēm, ōpē [nom., dat., and voc. sing. not used; pl. entire]; pl., **ōpēs, ōpūm, ōpībūs**, etc.; f., *power; means, resources*.

ōportēt, ōportērē, ōportuīt, *it behooves, it is necessary, one ought* [see 128 and LN. LXIX., Examples 6–8].

oppidūm, I, n., *town, walled town*.

op-pugno, ārē, āvī, ātūm (ob *against, pugno fight*), *attack, besiege, assault*.

optio, ōnīs, f. (*opto choose*), *choice, OPTION*.

ōpīs, ōpērīs, n., *work, labor*.

ōrātio, ōrātiōnīs, f. (*oro speak*), *speech, harangue; ORATION*.

ōrātōr, ōrātōrīs, m. (*oro plead*), **ORATOR**.

ordīno, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*ordo arranging*), *arrange, order*.

Orgētōrix, Igīs, m., *the noblest and richest among the Helvetii*.

ōriens, gen. **ōrientīs** (part. fr. *orior*), *rising*. **ORIENT**.

ōrior, ōrīrī, ortūs sūm, *rise, arise, begin*.

ornāmentūm, I, n. (*orno adorn*), **ORNAMENT, distinction**.

ōro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*os mouth*), *beseech, beg; implore, pray*.

ōs, ōrīs, n., *mouth; face*. **ORAL**.

ōs, ossīs, n., *bone*. **OSSI-FY**.

os-tendo, tendērē, tendī, tentūm (ob *before, tendo spread*), *show, point out, exhibit*. **OSTENSIBLE**.

Ostiā, ae, f., *a town at the mouth of the Tiber, built by Ancus Marcius*.

ostiūm, I, n., *mouth of a river*.

ōvūm, I, n., *egg*. **OVAL**.

P.

P., abbreviation of *Publius*, a Roman praenomen.

pābūlātio, ōnīs, f., *foraging*.

pābūlūm, I, n. (*pasco feed*), *food*.

pāco, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*pax peace*), **PACIFY; subdue**.

paenē, adv., *almost, nearly*.

pāgūs, I, m., *district, canton*.

pār, gen. **pārīs**, *equal, like*. **PAR**. **pārātūs, ā, ūm** (part. of *paro prepare*), **PRE-PARED, ready**.

parco, parcērē, pēpercī and **parsī, parcītūm** and **parsūm** (*parcus spare*), *to spare*.

pārio, pārērē, pēpērī, pārītūm and **partūm**, *bear, bring forth; ovum parēre, to lay an egg*.

pars, partīs, f., **PART**, *share; side; direction*.

parvūs, ā, ūm [comp., *minor, superl., minimus*], *small, little, insignificant*.

pascor, pascī, pastūs sūm, *feed, graze*.

passūs, ūs, m. (*pando stretch out the feet*), *step*, PACE; as a measure of length, about five feet.

pastōr, pastōris, m. (*pasco feed*), *shepherd*. PASTOR.

pātē-fācio, fācērē, fēcī, factūm (*pateo be open, facio make*), *make open, open*.

pātēr, patrīs, m., FATHER.

pāternūs, ā, ūm (*pater father*), PATERNAL.

pātiōr, pātī, passūs sūm, let, allow; suffer. PASSION, PASSIVE.

pātria, ae, f. (*pater father*), *native land, fatherland*. PATRIAL.

paucī, ae, ā, adj. pl., *few*.

paulūs, ā, ūm, little; paulo, n. *abl. sing., by a little, little*.

pāvo, ōnīs, m. and f., *peacock*.

pax, pācis, f., PEACE. PACIFY.

pellīs, pellīs, f., *skin*.

pello, pellērē, pēpūlī, pulsūm, *drive out or away, banish; rout*. RE-PULSE.

pennā, ae, f., *feather*. PEN.

pēr, prep. w. acc., *through; by means of, by*.

per-cūtio, cūtērē, cussī, cussūm (*per through, quatio strike*), *strike through, strike*. PERCUSSION.

per-do, dērē, dīdī, dītūm (*per through, do put*), *lose*. PERDICTION.

per-dūco, dūcērē, duxī, duc-tūm (*per through, duco lead*),

lead through or to, conduct; fos-sam perducere, to extend or make a trench.

per-fācīlis, ē (*per very, facīlis easy*), *very easy*.

per-ficio, fīcērē, fēcī, fectūm (*per completely, facio make*), *accomplish*. PERFECTION.

perfidīā, ae, f. (*perfidus one who breaks his promise*), PERFIDY.

pēriculōsūs, ā, ūm (*periculum danger; suffix ōsus full of*), *dangerous*.

pēriculūm, ī, n., *danger, risk*, PERIL.

pērītūs, ā, ūm, skilful, experi-enced.

per-mitto, mittērē, mīsī, mis-sūm (*per through, mitto let go*), PERMIT, allow. PERMISSION.

per-mōveo, mōvērē, mōvī, mō-tūm (*per completely, moveo more*), *prevail upon*.

pernīciēs, pernīciēī, f. (*perneco fr. per completely, neco kill*), *ruin, destruction*. PERNICIOUS.

perpaucī, ae, ā (*per very, pauci few*), *very few*.

per-sēquor, sēquī, sēcūtūs sūm (*per perseveringly, sequor follow*), *pursue*. PERSECUTE.

per-sēvēro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*per-sevērus very strict*), PERSEVERE, continue.

per-suādeo, suādērē, suāsī, suāsūm (*per thoroughly, suadeo advise*), PERSUADE, prevail upon. PERSUASION.

per-terreo, ērē, uī, itūm (per thoroughly, terreo frighten), thoroughly frighten, terrify.

per-tineo, tīnērē, tīnuī, tentūm (per thoroughly, teneo hold, lay hold of), extend; reach, tend; PERTAIN, belong.

per-turbo, ārē, āvī, ātūm (per thoroughly, turbo disturb), greatly disturb, DISTURB. PERTURB, PERTURBATION.

per-venio, vēnirē, vēnī, ventūm (per quite through, venio come), come through, come to; arrive; reach.

pēs, pēdis, m., foot. PEDAL.

pēto, pētērē, pētīvi and pētī, pētītūm, ask, request; beseech, beg for; seek; attack. PETITION.

pētūlantīā, ae, f. (petūlans saucy), sauciness; insolence; PETULANCE.

pīleūs, i, m., hat; cap.

pīlūm, i, n., javelin.

Pīso, ōnīs, m., a Roman consul.

pīstrīnūm, i, n. (pistor miller), mill.

plāceo, plācērē, plācuī, plācītūm, PLEASE; **plācēt, impers., it pleases, it seems good.**

plāgā, ae, f., hunting-net, toil.

plebs, plēbīs, f., commons, common people.

plūrimūs, ā, ūm [superl. of multus], most.

plūs, plūris [compar. of multus, see 85], more.

poenā, ae, f., punishment. PENAL.

polliceor, pollicērī, pollicītūs sūm (insep. prefix pot largely, liceor offer), promise.

pōno, pōnērē, pōsuī, pōsītūm, place, put; **castra pōnērē, to pitch a camp. POSITION.**

pōpūlātiō, ōnīs, f. (populus ravage), ravaging.

pōpūlor, ārī, ātūs sūm (populus people), ravage, lay waste. DE-POPULATE.

pōpūlūs, i, m., PEOPLE; pl., nations, tribes.

portā, ae, f., gate. PORTAL.

por-tendo, tendērē, tendī, tentūm, fortell, predict, presage; betoken; PORTEND.

porto, ārē, āvī, ātūm, carry, bear, TRANSPORT. EXPORT.

portōriūm, i, n. (porto carry), duty paid on goods imported or exported.

posco, poscērē, pōposcī, no sup., demand.

possessio, ōnīs, f. (possideo possess), POSSESSION.

pos-sideo, sīdērē, sēdī, sessūm (potis powerful, sedeo sit), be master of; POSSESS.

pos-sūm, pos-sē, pot-uī (potis able, sum be), be able, can [see 68].

post, prep. w. acc., after.

postea, adv. (post after, ea that), after that, afterwards.

post-eā-quām, after that, after.

postērūs, ā, ūm [comp., posterior; superl., postrēmus and postūmus], following, ensuing,

succeeding; **postero die**, *on the following day*; **postērī, ōrūm**, m. pl., *descendants*.

post-quām, conj., *after, as soon as*.

postrīdīē, adv. (*postero following, die on the day*), *on the following day*.

postūlo, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *ask for, demand*.

pōtens, gen. **pōtentis** (*possum be able*), *able, powerful, influential*. **POTENT**.

pōtestās, ātis, f. (*potens able*), *ability, power*; *opportunity*; **ālicui pōtestātēm faciērē**, *to give any one an opportunity*.

pōtior, pōtīrī, pōtītūs sūm (*potis able*), *acquire, obtain, get possession of*.

pōtītūs, adv., *rather, sooner*.

prae-cēdo, cēdērē, cessī, cessūm (*prae before, cedo go*), *surpass, excel*; **PRECEDE**. **PRECEDENCE**, **PRECEDENT**.

prae-cīpīto, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*praeceps headlong*), *throw violently, throw*. **PRECIPITATE**.

prae-cīpuē, adv. (*praecepiuus fr. praecipio fr. prae before, capio take*), *especially, chiefly*.

prae-dīco, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*prae publicly, dico tell*), *proclaim, declare*; *boast*. **PREDICATE**.

prae-fēro, ferrē, tūlī, lātūm (*prae before, ferobear*), **PREFER**.

prae-fīcio, fīcērē, fēcī, fectūm (*prae over, facio place*), *place over, put in command of*.

prae-mitto, mittērē, mīsī, mīsūm (*prae forward, mitto send*), *send forward*.

praemiūm, ī, n. (*prae beyond others, emo take*), *profit, reward*. **PREMIUM**.

prae-pōno, pōnērē, pōsuī, pōsītūm (*prae before, first*; *pono put*), *put before or first*; *prefer*.

PREPOSITION.

praesēpē, īs, n. (*praesepio, to fence in front*), *manger*.

praesīdiūm, ī, n. (*praesideo fr. prae before, sedeo sit*), *defence, protection*; *guard, garrison*.

prae-sto, stārē, stītī, stītūm and **stātūm** (*prae before, sto stand*), *stand before, excel*; *se praestāre, to show one's self*.

prae-sūm, essē, fuī (*prae over, sum be*), *be over, rule over, be in command of*.

praetēr, prep. w. acc. (*prae before and suffix ter*), *past, by*; *besides, except*.

praeter-eo, irē, īī, ītūm (*praeter by, eo go*), *go by*. **PRATERIT**.

praeter-quām, adv., *except*.

praetōr, praetōrīs, m., *praetor, a Roman magistrate, next in rank to a consul and elected annually*.

prātūm, ī, n., *meadow*.

prēcī, prēcēm, prēcē [nom. and gen. sing. not used], pl., **prēcēs, prēcūm**, etc., *request, prayer*.

prēmo, prēmērē, pressī, pres-

sūm, *press, press upon*. **OPPRESSION**.

prētiūm, *i*, *n.*, *worth, value, price*.

AP-PRECIATE.

prīdiē, *adv.*, *on the day before*.

primo, *adv.* (*primus*), *at first*.

primūm, *adv.* (*primus*), *at first*; **quām primūm**, *as soon as possible*.

primūs, *ā, ūm* [see 85], *first*;

primūm (*agmēn*), *the van of an army*. **PRIME, PRIMAL, PRIMARY**.

princeps, *gen. principis*, *adj.* (*primus first, capio take*), *first, chief*; **princeps**, *ipīs*, *m.*, *chief, leader*. **PRINCE, PRINCIPAL**.

principātūs, *ūs*, *m.* (*princeps chief*), *first place*; *pre-eminence*; **principātum tenēre**, *to be at the head*.

prīor, *prius* [superl. *primūs*, see 85], *the former*; *first*.

Priscus, *i*, *m.*, *a surname of the elder Tarquin*.

pristinūs, *ā, ūm*, *former*; **PRISTINE**.

priusquām, *adv.*, *before*.

privātīm, *adv.* (*privus single*), *as a private citizen*.

privātūs, *ā, ūm* (*part. of privo deprive*), **PRIVATE**.

prō, *prep. w. abl.*, *before, for, instead of*.

prōbo, *ārē, āvī, ātūm* (*probus good*), *show*; **PROVE. PROBATION**.

Prōcās, *ae*, *m.* See **Silvius**.

prō-cēdo, *cēdērē, cessī, cessūm*

(*pro forward, cedo go*), *go forth, proceed, advance*. **PROCESSION**.

prōcūl, *adv.* (*procello drive forward*), *afar off, far*.

prō-cūro, *ārē, āvī, ātūm* (*pro for, curo care*), *care for, take care of, manage*. **PROCURE**.

prōdīgiūm, *i*, *n.* (*pro beforehand, root dic point out*), **PRODIGY**.

proeliūm, *i*, *n.*, *battle*.

prōfectio, *ōnīs*, *f.* (*proficiscor set out*), *departure*.

prō-ficiscor, *ficiscī, fectūs sūm* (*pro forwards, facio put one's self*), *set out, depart*; *go, march, travel*.

prō-fūgio, *fūgērē, fūgī, fūgītūm* (*pro before, fugio flee*), *flee before, flee*.

prō-hībeo, *hībērē, hībui, hībītūm* (*pro in front, habeo hold*), *restrain, prevent, keep from*; **PROHIBIT. PROHIBITION**.

prō-jicio, *jicērē, jēcī, jectūm* (*pro forward, jacio throw*), *throw forward, cast away*; *se prō-jicērē*, *to throw one's self forward or down*. **PROJECT**.

prō-mōveo, *mōvērē, mōvī, mōtūm* (*pro forward, moveo move*), *move forward, advance*. **PROMOTION**.

prōpē, *prōpiūs, proximē*, *adv.*, *near, almost*.

prōpēro, *ārē, āvī, ātūm* (*propērus speedy*), *hasten*.

prōpinquūs, *i*, *m.* (*prope not far, hinc hence*), *relative*; **prōpin-**

quā, ae, f., *kinswoman*. **PROPINQUITY**.
prōpiōr, **prōpiūs** [superl. **proximus**, see 85], *nearer*.
prō-pōno, **pōnērē**, **pōsuī**, **pōsītūm** (pro before, pono place), *expose to view*; **PROPOSE**. **PROPOSAL**, **PROPOSITION**.
proptēr, prep. w. acc., *on account of*.
proptēr-eā, adv., *for this reason*.
protēreā quōd, *because*.
prō-spicio, **spicērē**, **spexi**, **spectūm** (pro forwards, specio look), *look forwards*; *look out for*. **PROSPECT**, **PROSPECTIVE**.
prō-sūm, **prōd-essē**, **prō-fui** (pro(d) for, sum be), *be for*, *be useful*; *benefit*, *profit*.
prōvinciā, ae, f., *province*.
proximē, adv. [positive **prōpē**, compar. **prōpiūs**], *very near*, *very recently*, *last*.
proximūs, ā, ūm [see 85], *next*, *nearest*; *ensuing*, *last*. **PROXIMITY**, **APPROXIMATE**.
publicē, adv. (publicus fr. populus people), *in the name of the state*.
Publiūs, i, m., a Roman name.
pūdōr, **pūdōris**, m. (pudeo feel shame), *shame*, *feeling of shame*.
puellā, ae, f., *girl*.
puēr, **puēri**, m., *boy*. **PUER-ILE**.
puērītia, ae, f. (puer boy), *boyhood*, *childhood*.
pugnā, ae, f., *battle*. **PUGNACIOUS**.

pugno, ārē, āvi, ātūm, *fight*.
pulchēr, **pulchrā**, **pulchrūm** (polio polish), *beautiful*.
pūnio, irē, ivi, itūm (poena punishment), **PUNISH**.
pūpillus, i, m. (pupulus a little boy), **PUPIL**, *ward*.
pūto, ārē, āvi, ātūm, *think*, *believe*.
Pyrēnaeus, ā, ūm, *Pyrenean*;
Pyrēnaei montes, *the Pyrenees*.

Q.

quā, adv. (qui) *where*.
quādrāgēsīmūs, ā, ūm (quadraginta forty), *fortieth*.
quādrāgintā, num. adj. indecl. (quattuor four), *forty*.
quaero, **quaerērē**, **quaesivi** and **quaesii**, **quaesitūm**, see, ask, **INQUIRE**. **IN-QUEST**, **IN-QUI-SITION**.
quālis, **quālē**, *of what sort*; *as*.
quām, conj. and adv., *than*; *as*.
quām-ob-rēm, adv., *on account of which thing*; *for which reason*; *wherefore*.
quam-quām, conj., *although*.
quamvis, conj. (quam as, vis you will), *as you will*; *however much*; *although*.
quantūs, ā, ūm, *how much*; *how great*; *as*; **quantum boni**, *how much good*.
quārē, adv. (abl. of quae and res), *for which thing*, *for which*.
quartūs, ā, ūm (quattuor four), *fourth*. **QUART**.

quattuor, num. adj. indecl., *four*.
quē, conj., and [see LN. XXIII.,
 VY., 1].

quēror, **quēri**, **questūs sūm**,
complain. **QUERULOUS**.

qui, **quae**, **quōd**, rel. pron., *who*,
which, *what*; *that* [see 114].

qui, **quae**, **quōd** [interrog. pronoun
 used adjectively, see 116],
which? *what?* *what sort of a?*
what kind of a?

quid, *why?* [see LN. XCII.,
 NOTE 1].

quidām, **quaedām**, **quoddām**
 or **quiddām**; gen. **cujusdām**;
 [indef. pron. declined like **qui**],
a certain.

quidēm, adv., *indeed*; **ne** —
quidem, *not* — *even*.

quīn, conj. (**qui** by *which*, **ne** *not*),
but that, *that not*.

quīndēcīm, num. adj. indecl.
 (*quinque five*, *decem ten*), *fif-*
teen.

quīngentī, ae, ā (*quinque five*,
centum hundred), *five hundred*.

quīnī, ae, ā (*quinque five*), *five*
each.

quis, **quae**, **quid**, interrog. pron.,
who? *what?* [see 116].

quis, indef. pronoun, *anybody*,
anything [see 116].

quisquām, **quaequām**, **quid-**
quām or **quicquām**; gen. **cujus-**
quām; [indef. pron. declined
 like **quis**], *any one*, *anything*,
any.

quō, adv., *that*, *in order that*.

quōd, conj., *because*, *that*.

quōmōdō, adv. (**qui** *what*, **mo-**
dus *manner*), *in what manner*,
by what means, *how*.

quōquē, conj., *also*.

quōtīdiē, adv. (**quot every**, **dies**
day), *every day*, *daily*.

quūm and **cūm**, rel. adv., *when*,
as; conj., *since*; *although*;
quūm — **tūm**, *both* — *and*.

R.

rādix, **rādicis**, f., *root*; **radix** or
radices montis, *the foot of a*
mountain. **RADISH**.

rāpīnā, ae, f. (**rapio** *seize*), *plun-*
dering; **RAPINE**.

rāpio, **rāpērē**, **rāpui**, **raptūm**,
seize, *plunder*. **RAPTURE**.

raptōr, **ōris**, m. (**rapio** *seize*),
one who seizes; *robber*.

Raurāci, **ōrūm**, m., a people in
 Northeastern Gaul, neighbors
 of the Helvetii.

rēcens, gen. **rēcentis**, **RECENT**,
fresh, *new*.

rē-cīpio, **cīpērē**, **cēpi**, **ceptūm**
 (**re** *back*, **capio** *take*), *take back*;
RECEIVE; **se recipere**, *to be-*
take one's self, *withdraw*. **RE-**
CEPTION.

red-do, **dērē**, **dīdi**, **dītūm** (**re**(d)
back again, **do** *give*), *return*.
RENDER, **RENDITION**.

rēd-eo, **irē**, **ii**, **ītūm** (**re**(d) *back*,
eo *go*), *go back*, *return*.

rēd-īmo, **īmērē**, **ēmī**, **emptūm**
 (**re**(d) *back*, **emo** *buy*), *buy back*,
release, *ransom*; *purchase*; *hire*,

farm. **REDEEM, REDEMP-
TION.**

rēditio, ōnis, f. (redeo go back),
going back, return.

rē-dūco, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm
(re back, duco lead), lead back,
lead. **REDUCE, REDUCTION.**

rē-fēro, ferrē, tūli, lātūm (re
back, fero bear), bear or bring
back, restore. **REFER, RE-
LATE.**

re-fluo, fluērē, no perf. nor sup.
(re back, fluo flow), flow back.

REFLUENT, REFLUX.

rēgio, ōnis, f., REGION.

rēgiūs, ā, ūm (rex king), royal.

regno, ārē, āvi, ātūm (regnum
rule), reign, rule.

regnūm, ī, (rego to rule), royal
power, sovereignty; government;
kingdom.

rē-jicio, jicērē, jēcī, jectūm (re
back, jacio throw), throw back,
hurl back. **REJECT, REJEC-
TION.**

**rēligio, ōnis, f., RELIGION, sanc-
tity.**

**rē-linguo, linquērē, liquī, lic-
tūm** (re behind, linquo leave),
leave behind, leave; quit, aban-
don. **RELINQUISH.**

rēliquit, ā, ūm (relinquo let re-
main), remaining, rest of.

**rē-māneo, mănērē, mansī,
mansūm** (re behind, maneo
stay), stay behind, **REMAIN.**

rēmīniscor, rēmīniscī, recall to
mind, recollect. **REMINISCENCE.**

rē-mōveo, mōvērē, mōvī, mō-

tūm (re back, moveo move),
REMOVE. **REMOTE.**

Rēmūs, ī, m., twin brother of
Romulus.

rē-nuncio, ārē, āvi, ātūm (re
back, nuncio bring word), re-
port. **RENOUNCE.**

rēpentē, adv. (repens sudden),
suddenly.

rē-pērio, pēfirē, pēfī, pertūm
(re again, pario produce), find,
discover.

**rē-pōno, pōnērē, pōsuī, pōsi-
tūm** (re again, pono place),
place again, restore. **REPOSE.**

rēs, rēi, f., thing, affair.

**re-scindo, scindērē, scīdī, scis-
sūm** (re away, scindo cut), cut
away, destroy. **RESCIND.**

**re-spondeo, spondērē, spondī,
sponsūm** (re in return, spon-
deo promise), reply, answer.
RESPOND.

responsūm, ī, n. (respondeo re-
ply), answer. **RESPONSE.**

respublicā, reipublicae, f. (res
affair, publica belonging to the
people), **REPUBLIC, common-
wealth** [see 110].

**re-stituo, stitūērē, stitūī, sti-
tūtūm** (re again, statuo set
up), restore. **RESTITUTION.**

rē-tīneo, tīnērē, tīnuī, tentūm
(re back, teneo hold), hold back,
restrain, prevent. **RETENTION.**

rēvērentiā, ae, f. (revereor stand
in awe of), **REVERENCE.**

**rē-verto, vertērē, vertī, ver-
sūm and**

rē-vertor, vertī, versūs sūm (re back, *verto* turn), turn back, return. REVERT, REVERSION.
rē-voco, ārē, āvī, ātūm (re back, *voco* call), call back. REVOKE.
rex, rēgis, m., king. REGAL.
Rhea, ae, f., Rhea Silria, the mother of Romulus and Remus.
Rhēnūs, i, m., the Rhine.
Rhōdānūs, i, m., the Rhone.
ripā, ae, f., bank (of a stream).
rixor, ārī, ātūs sūm (*rixa* quarrel), to quarrel.
rōgo, ārē, āvī, ātūm, ask, demand, request.
Rōmā, ae, f., Rome.
Rōmānūs, ā, ūm, Roman ; Rōmānūs, i, m., a Roman.
Rōmūlūs, i, m., the founder and first king of Rome ; Romūlus Silvius, a king of Alba.
rūpes, rūpis, f. (rumpo break), rock, cliff.

S.

Sābīnī, ōrūm, m., the Sabines, an ancient Italian people adjoining the Latins.
sācēr, sacrā, sacrum, SACRED ; **sacrā, ōrūm, n. pl., sacred rites, sacrifices.**
sācerdōs, ōtis, m. and f. (sacer sacred, do give), priest ; priestess.
saepē, saepiūs, saepissīme, adv., often.
saepē-nūmēro, adv., oftentimes, frequently.

sālūto, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*salus* greeting), greet, SALUTE. SALUTATION.
sanguis, sanguinis, m., blood. SANGUINE, SANGUINARY.
Santōnēs, ūm and Santōnī, ōrūm, m. pl., a people of Aquitania.
sāpientiā, ae, f. (sapiens wise), wisdom.
sarcinā, ae, f. (sarcio to patch), bundle ; pl., baggage carried by soldiers. See **impedimenta.**
sātīs, adv., enough, sufficiently ; used adjectively in the sense of *sufficient.*
sātīs-fācio, fācērē, fēcī, factūm (*satis* enough, *facio* do), do enough, SATISFY, give SATISFACTION.
Sātūrnīā, ae, f., a town built by Saturn on the Capitoline Hill.
Sātūrnūs, i, m. (sero sow), Saturn, the father of Jupiter ; honored as the god of agriculture.
scēlūs, scēlērīs, n., crime, guilt, wickedness.
scio, scīrē, scīvī and scī, scītūm, know, understand. SCIENCE.
scribo, scribērē, scripsī, scriptūm, write. SCRIBE, DE-SCRIBE, SCRIPT, SCRIPTURE.
scūtūm, i, n., a shield ; [scutum was an oblong *shield*, made of wood, and covered with leather ; **clipeus,** a round brazen *shield*.]
sēd, conj., but.
sēdēs, sēdis, f. (sedeo sit), seat ;

dwelling-place; **sedes regni**, *seat of government*.
Sēgūsianī, ōrūm, m. pl., a people of Gaul, neighbors of the Allobroges and Aedui.
sēmēl, adv., *once*.
sempēr, adv., *always, continually*.
sēnātor, ōrīs, m. (*senex old*), SENATOR.
sēnātūs, ūs, m. (*senex old*), SENATE.
sēnī, ae, ā (*sex six*), *six each*.
sententiā, ae, f. (*sentio think*), *opinion*. SENTENCE.
septēm, num. adj. indecl., *seven*.
septentriōnēs (septemtriōnēs), ūm, m. pl., *the north*; sub **septentriōnibus**, *towards the north*.
septimūs, ā, ūm (*septem seven*), *seventh*.
Sēquānā, ae, m., a river of Gaul, the modern Seine.
Sēquānī, ōrūm, m. pl., a people of Gaul, dwelling on the Sequana.
Sēquānūs, ā, ūm, *of the Sequani*.
sēquor, sēquī, sēcūtūs sūm, *follow; accompany*. SEQUENCE.
sermo, sermōis, m., *discourse, conversation*. SERMON.
servītus, ūtis, f. (*servus slave*), *slavery, bondage*.
Serviūs, ī, m., *Servius Tullius*, the sixth king of Rome.
servūs, ī, m., *slave*, SERVANT.
sex, num. adj. indecl., *SIX*.
sī, conj., *if; whether; see whether*.
sic, adv., *so, thus*.

siccūs, ā, ūm, *dry*; **siccūm, ī**, n., *dry land*.
sic-ūt and sic-ūtī, adv., *as; as if*.
significo, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*signum sign, facio make*), *mean, SIGNIFY. SIGNIFICANT*.
signūm, ī, n., *SIGN, mark*; SIGNAL.
silvā, ae, f., *woods, forest*. SILVAN.
Silviā, ae, f., *Rhea Silvia*, the mother of Romulus and Remus.
Silviūs, ī, m., name of several kings of Alba; **Silvius Procas**, a king of Alba and father of Numitor and Amulius.
similis, similē, *like*, SIMILAR.
sīn, conj. (*si if, ne not*), *but if*.
sīnē, prep. w. abl., *without*.
singulī, ae, ā, *SINGLE, one by one; each*.
sīnistēr, sīnistrā, sīnistrūm, *left*. SINISTER.
sōcēr, sōcērī, m., *father-in-law*.
sōciūs, ī, m., *ally*. AS-SOCI-ATE.
sōl, sōlis, m., *sun*. SOLAR.
sōleo, sōlērē, sōlītūs sūm, *be wont, be accustomed*.
sōlītūdo, īnis, f. (*solus alone*), *desert; solitary place*; SOLITUDE.
sōlūm, adv. (*solus alone*), *only, alone*.
sōlūm, ī, n., *ground, SOIL*.
sōlūs, ā, ūm, *alone, only* [see 24].
sōnītūs, ūs, m. (*sono make a noise*), *sound, noise*.

sonūs, ī, m. (*sono make a noise*), noise.

sōrōr, sōrōris, f., sister.

spātium, ī, n., SPACE; opportunity.

specto, āre, āvi, ātūm (*specio look*), look at, behold, see; face, front, be situated.

spēs, spēi, f. hope, expectation.

spirītūs, ūs, m. (*spiro breathe*), breath; pride; lofty airs.

spontē, f. abl. [gen. *spontis*; no other cases found], of free will; **suā sponte**, of his own free will.

SPONTANEOUS.

stātuo, stātuērē, stātui, stātūtūm (*status standing*), set up; put; establish; decide. STATUTE.

stērīlis, ē, unfruitful, STERILE.

stipendiūm, ī, n. (*stips contribution, pendo pay*), tax, tribute. STIPEND.

sto, stārē, stēti, stātūm, stand; **nobis sanguine stat**, it costs us blood. STATE, STATION.

stōlīdūs, ā, ūm, foolish. STOLID.

strēnuūs, ā, ūm, bold, brave. STRENUOUS.

stūdeo, stūdērē, stūdui, no sup., be eager or zealous, desire.

stūdiūm, ī, n. (*studeo be eager*), zeal, desire. STUDY.

suādeo, suādērē, suāsī, suāsūm, advise, PER-SUADE.

sūb, prep. w. abl., under, beneath; in the time of; **sub monte**, at the foot of a mountain.

sub-dūco dūcērē, duxī, duc-

tūm (*sub from under, duco draw*), draw from under; withdraw; take away.

sub-eo, irē, īvi and īi, ītūm (*sub under, eo go*), go under; endure.

sūbito, adv. (*subitus sudden*), suddenly, quickly.

sub-lēvo, āre, āvi, ātūm (*sub from beneath, levo lift up*), raise up, support; help, aid.

sub-rīdeo, rīdērē, rīsī, rīsūm (*sub a little, rideo laugh*). smile.

sub-silio, silirē, silui and silii, no sup. (*sub up, salio leap*), leap up, jump.

sub-vēho, vēhērē, vexī, vectūm (*sub from below, veho carry*), bring up, transport.

suc-cēdo, cēdērē, cessī, cessūm (*sub behind, cedo come*). SUCCEED, follow. SUCCESSION.

Suēvi, ōrūm, m. pl., a powerful people of Germany.

sui, of himself, herself, itself, themselves [see 112]. SUICIDE. See caedo.

Sullā, ae, m., Lucius Cornelius Sulla, a celebrated Roman.

sūm, essē, fui, be [see 62].

summā, ae, f. (*summus highest*), amount, sum total. SUM.

summūs, ā, ūm, highest [positive *supērus*, comparative *superior*, superlative *suprēmus* and *summus*].

sūmo, sūmērē, sumpsī, sump-tūm, take, AS-SUME. AS-SUMPTION.

sūpēr, prep. w. acc. and abl., *over, above, upon*. SUPER-.

sūperbio, Irē, nō perf. nor sup. (*superbus proud*), *be proud of*.

sūperbūs, ā, ūm, *proud*; **Superbūs**, ī, m., *the Proud*, a surname of the younger Tarquin, the last king of Rome.

sūpēriōr, **sūpēriūs**, *upper, higher: former*. SUPERIOR. See **supērus**.

sūpērūs, ā, ūm [comp. *superior*, superl. *suprēmus* or *summus*] (*super over, above*), *above, on high, upper*.

sūpēro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*super over*), *surmount, surpass, overcome, subdue*.

sūper-sūm, essē, fuī (*super over, beyond; sum be*), *be over; survive*.

supplicium, ī, n., *punishment*.

sus-cīpio, cīpērē, cēpī, ceptūm (*sub under, capio take*), *undertake, take upon; engage in; receive; sibi suscipere, to take upon one's self*.

suspicio, ōnīs, f. (*suspīcor suspect*), SUSPICION.

suspīcor, āri, ātūs sūm (*suspicio fr. sub secretly, specio look at*), SUSPECT.

sus-tīneo, tīnērē, tīnuī, tentūm (*sub up, teneo hold*), *hold up, SUSTAIN; endure; withstand*.

suūs, ā, ūm (*sui*), *his, his own; her, her own; its, its own; their, their own*.

T.

T., abbreviation of *Titus*, a Roman praenomen.

tābūlā, ae, f., *board; writing-table; muster-roll*. TABLE.

tālentūm, ī, n., a TALENT, a sum of money equal to about \$1200.

tām, adv., *so, so very*.

tāmēn, adv., *nevertheless; yet, still*.

tamquām and **tanquām**, adv. (*tam so, quam as*), *as much as; as if*.

Tānāquil, ūis, f., wife of Tarquinius Priscus.

tandēm, adv., *at length; at last*.

tantūs, ā, ūm, *so great, such, so large*.

tarditās, ātis, f. (*tardus slow*), *slowness, TARDINESS; heaviness*.

Tarpēiā, ae, f., *Tarpeia* [pronounced *Tar-pē-ya*], daughter of Spurius Tarpeius.

Tarpēiūs, ā, ūm, *Tarpeian* [pronounced *Tar-pē-yan*]; **mons Tarpēius**, *the Tarpeian Rock*, the name of a rock on the Capitoline hill from which criminals were thrown headlong; *the Tarpeian Mount*.

Tarquīnī, ōrūm, m. pl., an ancient town of Etruria.

Tarquīniūs, ī, m., *Tarquin*, the name of an illustrious Roman family, of which two, Priscus and Superbus, were kings.

tectum, *I*, *n.* (*tego to cover*),
roof.

tēlūm, *I*, *n.*, *weapon, missile.*

tempĕro, *ārē, āvi, ātūm* (*tempus a piece cut off*), *abstain.*

TEMPER, TEMPERATE.

tempestās, ātis, *f.* (*tempus time*), *storm; TEMPEST.*

templūm, *I*, *n.*, **TEMPLE.**

tempūs, tempōris, *n.*, *time.*

TEMPORAL.

tēneo, tēnērē, tēnuī, tentūm,
hold; have, possess; keep; re-
strain; mēmōriā tēnērē, to
remember.

tēnēr, tēnērā, tēnērūm, TEN-
DER, delicate.

tento, ārē āvi, ātūm, try. TEN-
TATIVE.

terrā, ae, f., *earth, land, ground.*
TERRACE.

terreo, ērē, uī, itūm, frighten,
TERRIFY.

terrīto, ārē, āvi, ātūm (*terreo*
frighten), *terrify.*

terrītōriūm, I, n. (*terra earth*),
TERRITORY.

tertio, adv. (*tertius third*), *the*
third time.

testīs, testīs, m. and f., *witness.*
TESTIFY.

Ti, *abbreviation of Tiberius, a*
Roman praenomen.

Tībĕris, Is [*acc. Im, abl. I*], *m.*,
the Tiber, a river in Italy on
which Rome is situated.

Tībĕriūs, I, m. *See Ti.*

timeo, ērē, uī, *no supine, to*
fear.

tīmīdūs, ā, ūm, (*timeo to fear*),
TIMID; cowardly.

tīmōr, tīmōris, m., *fear. TIM-*
OROUS.

tintinnābūlūm, I, n. (*tintinno*
to ring), *bell.*

Titūs, I, m. *See T.*

tollo, tollērē, sustālī, sublā-
tūm, lift, raise; pick up; re-
move, take away; destroy.

tōnitrūs, ūs, m., and **tōnitrū, n.**
indecl. (tono to thunder), thun-
der.

tōno, tōnārē, tōnuī, tōnītūm,
thunder.

tōtūs, ā, ūm, whole, entire.

trā-dūco and trans-dūco, dū-
cērē, duxī, ductūm (*trans*
across, duco lead), *lead across*
lead; lead from one place to an-
other. TRADUCE.

trans, prep. w. acc., *across, over;*
beyond. TRANS.

trans-eo, Irē, iI, itūm (*trans*
across, over; eo go), *go across or*
over; cross. TRANSIT, TRAN-
SITIVE, TRANSIENT, TRANSI-
TION.

trans-fĕro, ferrē, tūlī, lātūm
(trans across, fero bear), *bear*
across; TRANSFER. TRANSLA-
TION.

trans-igo, Igērē, ĕgī, actūm
(trans through to the end, ago
bring), *bring to an end; spend.*
TRANSACT, TRANSACTION.

tran-silīo or trans-silīo, silīrē,
silīvī, silīi, or siluī, sultūm
(trans over, salio leap), *leap over.*

trans-porto, *ārē, āvī, ātūm* (trans across, porto carry), carry across, TRANSPORT.

TRANSPORTATION.

trēs, triā [see 108], three.

Trēviri, ōrūm, m. pl., a people of Northern Gaul.

tribūnūs, ī, m. (tribus tribe), TRIBUNE; **tribūnī militūm**, military tribunes, of which officers each legion had six.

tribuo, tribuērē, tribuī, tribūtūm, give, grant, bestow. TRIBUTE, CON-TRIBUTE, CON-TRIBUTION.

trīcēsīmūs, ā, ūm (triginta thirty), thirtieth.

trīdūm, ī, n. (tres three, dies day), three days.

trīgēmīnī, ōrūm, m. pl. (tres three gignor be born), three brothers born at a birth.

trīgintā, num. adj. indecl., thirty.

tristīs, tristē, sad, sorrowful.

triumpho, ārē, āvī, ātūm (triumphus a triumph), to triumph.

Trōjā, ae, f., Troy, a city in the northwestern part of Asia Minor.

Trōjānūs, ā, ūm, Trojan.

tū, pers. pron., thou, you [see 112].

tūbā, ae, f. (akin to tubus, a tube), trumpet.

tūbīcēn, īnīs, m. (tuba trumpet, cano to sound), trumpeter.

Tulingī, ōrūm, m. pl., a people of Southern Germany, neighbors of the Helvetii.

Tullīūs, ī, m. See **Servius**.

Tullīā, ae, f., daughter of Servius Tullius, and wife of Tarquinius Superbus.

Tullūs, ī, m., *Tullus Hostilius*, the third king of Rome.

tūm, adv., then; also.

tūmūlūs, ī, m. (tumeo swell), mound.

turrīs, turrīs, f., tower. TURRET.

tūtōr, ōrīs, m. (tueor protect), guardian; TUTOR.

tūtūs, ā, ūm (tueor protect), safe.

tuūs, ā, ūm, poss. pron. (tu thou, you), thy, thine; your, yours.

týrannūs, ī, m., monarch; tyrant.

U.

ūbēr, ūbērīs, n, udder; teat.

ūbī, adv., when, where.

ulciscor, ulciscī, ultūs sūm, take revenge; avenge.

ullūs, ā, ūm, any [see 24].

ultēriōr, ultēriūs (ulter that is beyond), farther [see 85]. ULTERIOR.

ultrā, prep. w. acc., beyond. ULTRA-

ūnā, adv. (unus one and the same), at the same time; in company, together.

undē, adv., from which place, whence.

undīque, adv. (unde, que), from all parts; on all sides.

ūnūs, ā, ūm, one, single; one and the same; pl., alone [see 24].

urbs, urbīs, f., city. SUB-URBS.
ūsūs, ūs, m. (utor use), USE;
advantage.

usquē, adv., even; till.

ūt and ūtī, conj., that, in order
that; as.

ūtēr, utrā, utrūm, which of two,
which [see 24].

ūterquē, ūtrāquē, ūtrumquē;
gen. utriusquē, etc. [declined
like ūtēr, see 24], each, both.

ūtīlis, ūtīlē (utor use, suffix ilis
denoting capability), useful, ben-
eficial, profitable.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsūs sūm, USE, make
use of; adopt.

utrūm, adv. (uter which of two),
whether.

uvā, ae, f., a grape; a bunch of
grapes.

uxōr, uxōris, f., wife.

V.

vāco, ārē, āvī, ātūm, be unoccu-
 pied. VACATE, VACANT, VA-
CATION.

vādūm, ī, n. (vado go), ford,
shallow.

vāgītūs, ūs, m. (vagio cry,
squall), crying, squalling.

vāgor, āri, ātūs sūm (vagus
roaming about), roam about,
wander about. VAGA-BOND.

vāleo, ērē, uī, ītūm, PRE-VAIL.

vallūm, ī, n. (vallus the line of
palisades, stakes, set about an in-
trenchment), rampart, intrench-
ment.

vasto, ārē, āvī, ātūm (vastus
empty, desolate), lay waste, DE-
VASTATE.

vectigāl, vectigālīs, n. (veho
carry), toll paid for carrying
goods into a country; tax; rev-
enue.

vēhementēr, vēhementiūs, vē-
hementissimē, adv. (vehē-
mens violent), violently, severely;
furiously; VEHEMENTLY.

vēl, conj., or; vēl — vēl, eūher
— or.

vendo, vendērē, vendīdī, ven-
dītūm (venum sale, do give),
sell. VEND.

vēnio, vēnīrē, vēnī, ventūm,
come; arrive at.

verbēr, ēris, n., blow. RE-VER-
BER-ATE.

verbūm, ī, n., word. VERB,
VERBAL.

vēreor, vērērī, vēritūs sūm,
fear.

vērō, adv. (verus true), in truth,
truly; indeed; but.

vescor, vescī, fill one's self with;
live upon; eat.

Vēsontio, ōnis, f., the chief
town of the Sequāni.

vespēr, vespēris and vespēr, ī,
m., evening star; evening; ad
vespērūm, till evening. VES-
PER, VESPER.

Vestā, ae, f., Vesta, the goddess
of the hearth, to whom a per-
petual fire was kept burning.

Vestālīs, ē, of or belonging to
Vesta, Vestal.

vestēr, vestrā, vestrūm, poss. pron., *your, yours*.

vētūs, gen. **vētēris**, *old, long standing, ancient*. VETERAN, IN-VETER-ATE.

vexillūm, **ī**, n. (*velum sail*), *standard; flag*.

vexo, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*veho carry*), *trouble, annoy, harass*. VEX, VEXATION, VEXATIOUS.

viā, ae, f., *way, road; path; march*.

vīcēsīmūs, ā, ūm (*viginti twenty*), *twentieth*.

victōriā, ae, f. (*victor conqueror*), VICTORY.

vīcūs, **ī**, m., *village*

videō, vīdērē, vīdī, vīsūm, *see*.

videor, vīdērī, vīsūs sūm, pass. and deponent, *be seen; seem; seem good or proper*.

vīgiliā, ae, f. (*vigīlo to watch*), *watch; de tertia vigilia, in the third watch*. See LN. LV., NOTE 5.

vīgintī, num. adj. indecl., *twenty*.

vinco, vincērē, vīcī, victūm, *conquer*.

vinculūm, **ī**, n. (*vincio bind*), *a chain; in vincula conjicere, to throw into prison*.

vīndīco, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *claim*.

VINDICATE, VINDICATION.

vīr, vīri, m., *man; hero; husband*.

See LN. XXV., NOTE 1.

virgō, inīs, f. (*vireo flourish, bloom*), VIRGIN.

virtūs, virtūtīs, f. (*vir man, hero*), *valor, courage; VIRTUE*.

vīs, vīs, [acc. **vīm**, dat. and abl. **vī**; pl., **vīrēs, vīriūm, vīribūs**, etc.] f., *strength, power*.

vītā, ae, f. (*vivo live*), *life*. VITAL.

vītīs, **īs**, f., *vine*.

vīto, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *shun, avoid*.

vix, adv., *with difficulty; scarcely, hardly*.

vōco, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *call, summon, invite*. VOCATION, VOCATIONIVE.

vōlo, vellē, vōlūī, *be WILLING; wish; desire* [see 125].

vōluntās, ātīs, f. (*volo to wish*), *wish, consent*. VOLUNTARY.

vos, pers. pron. pl., *you* [see 112].

vox, vōcīs, f., VOICE. VOCAL.

vulnēro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*vulnus wound*), *to wound*.

vulnūs, vulnērīs, *a wound*.

VULNER-ABLE.

vulpes, īs, f., *fox*.

II. English-Latin.

The words given in this Vocabulary are more fully described in the preceding.
See that Vocabulary also for the Proper Names.

A.

able, be able, possum.
about, w. numerals, ad, circiter.
abundance, copia.
accuse, accūso.
across, trans.
adopt, utor.
advancing, veniens.
advise, moneo.
affair, res.
after, prep. post; conj. postquam.
afterwards, postea.
against, in, contra.
aid, auxilium; to aid, juvo.
all, every, omnis; pl. omnes;
all, the whole, totus.
ally, socius.
almost, paene, prope.
alone, solus.
also, etiam.
although, quum, etsi.
ambassador, legātus.
among, apud, inter, in.
and, et, atque, que; both — and,
et — et.
animal, animal.
announce, nuncio.
any, quis, ullus.
anything, quid, aliquid (116, a).
appoint, creo.

arms, arma.
army, exercitus, agmen.
around, circum.
arrive, pervenio.
arrival, adventus.
ascertain, cognosco.
as soon as, postquam; as soon as
possible, quam primum.
ask, quaero; ask for, rogo.
assemble, convenio.
assembly, concilium.
assist, adsum.
at home, domi.
attack, impētus; to attack, op-
pugno.
attempt, conor.
at Caesar's feet, Caesari ad pe-
des.
auxiliaries, auxilia.
avoid, vito.
away, take away, tollo.

B.

bad, malus.
baggage, impedimenta.
bank, ripa.
battle, proelium, pugna.
be, sum; be present, adsum; be
from or distant, absum.
beautiful, pulcher.

because, quod, quia.

become, fio; become master of, potior.

before, ante, pro; priusquam.

beg for, peto.

beginning, initium.

besiege, oppugno.

best, optimus.

betake myself, me confero, me recipio.

better, melior.

between, inter.

big, magnus.

bold, audax.

born, bc born, nascor.

both, uterque; both — and, et — et.

boy, puer.

brave, fortis.

bravely, fortiter.

break up (camp), (castra) moveo.

bridge, pons.

bring, fero; bring upon, inféro.

broad, latus.

brother, frater.

building, aedificium.

burn, incendo, cremo; burn up, exūro, combūro.

but if, sin.

hūy, emo.

by, a, ab; by no means, minime.

C.

call, summon, voco; call, name, appello; call together, convoco; call to mind, commemoro.

camp, castra; pitch a camp, castra pono; break up camp, castra moveo.

can, possum.

capture, expugno.

carry, carry on, gero; carry on war, bellum gero; bello.

cart, carrus.

cause, causa.

cavalry, equitatus; of cavalry, equester.

cavalryman, eques.

censure, accuso.

character, natura.

chief, princeps.

choose, creo.

citadel, arx.

citizen, civis.

city, urbs.

cliff, rupes.

cold, frigus.

collect, comperto, conféro, condūco.

come, venio; come together, convenio; come to, pervenio.

comitium, comitium.

command, be in command of, praesum.

company, in company, una.

complain, queror.

conceal, occulto.

concerning, de.

confidence, fides.

congratulate, gratūlor.

conquer, vinco.

consent, voluntas.

consider, habeo, duco.

conspiracy, conjuratio.

consul, consul; in the consulship of Caesar, Caesare consule.

continually, continenter.

corn, frumentum.

could, past tense of **possum**.
council, **concilium**.
counsel, **consilium**.
country, fatherland, **patria**.
cowardly, **ignāvus**.
cross, **transeo**.

D.

danger, **pericŭlum**.
dangerous, **periculōsus**.
daughter, **filia**.
dawn, at the earliest dawn, **prima luce**.
day, dies; at daybreak, **prima luce**; *on the day before*, **pridie**.
death, **mors**.
deceive, **decipio**.
decide, **statuo**.
decision, **judicium**.
deep, **altus**.
defend, **defendo**.
delay, **moror**.
deliberate, **delibēro**.
demand, **postŭlo, posco**.
depart, **discēdo**.
departure, **profectio**.
describe, **designo**.
design, **consilium**.
desire, **studium, cupiditas**.
desirous, **cupidus**.
destroy, **deleo**.
destruction, **perniciēs**.
determine, **judico**.
devastate, **vasto**.
die, **morior**.
differ, **diffēro**.
difficulty, **angustiae**; *with difficulty*, **vix**.

dig, **fodio**.
direction, **pars**.
distance, **spatium**.
distant, be distant, **absum**; *most distant*, **extrēmus**.
distinguished, **nobilis**.
disturb, **commoveo**.
ditch, **fossa**.
divulge, **enuncio**.
do, **facio**.
draw, **duco**.
dwel, **incōlo**.

E.

each, to each other, **inter se**.
easily, **facile**.
easy, **facilis**; *very easy*, **perfacilis**.
either — or, aut — aut.
elect, **creo**.
embassy, **legatio**.
empire, **imperium**.
empty, **inſuo**.
encamp, **castra pono**; *consido*.
encompass, **contineo**.
encourage, **confirmo**.
end, **finis**.
endeavor, **nitor**.
endure, **subeo**.
enemy, **hostis**.
enervate, **effemino**.
entire, **totus**.
entreat, **implōro, oro**.
equal, **par, aequus**.
establish, **confirmo**.
even, not even, **ne — quidem**.
excel, **praecēdo, praesto**.
exhort, **hortor**.
expectation, **spes**.

extraordinary, incredibilia.
eye, oculus.

F.

far, by far, longe; very far, longissime.
farther, adj., ulterior; adv., longius.
father, pater.
father-in-law, socer.
fatherland, patria.
favor, faveo.
fear, timor; to fear, timeo, vereor.
few, pauci.
field, ager.
fifteen, quindécim.
fifth, quintus.
fight, pugno.
find, reperio.
fire, ignis; set on fire, incendo.
first, primus; in the first part of the night, prima nocte.
five, quinque.
flight, fuga.
flee, fugio.
flow, fluo.
follow, sequor.
fond, cupidus.
foot, pes; at the foot of the mountain, sub monte.
for, de w. abl., ad w. acc.; for this reason, hoc, eo.
foraging, pabulatio.
forest, silva.
forget, obliviscor.
former, pristinus, vetus.
forth, lead forth, edūco.

fortify, munio.
fortune, fortuna.
forward, send forward, praemitto; move forward, promoveo.
free, liber; of one's own free will, sua sponte.
friend, amicus.
friendly, amicus.
friendship, amicitia.
from, from near, a, ab; from out of, e, ex.
furiously, vehementer.
furnish, facio.
furthermost, extrēmus.
future, in the future, in reliquum tempus.

G.

garrison, praesidium.
general, imperātor.
generosity, liberalitas.
get possession of, potior.
get rid of, depōno.
girl, puella.
give, do; give orders, impéro; give satisfaction, satisfacio.
glory, gloria.
go, eo; go forth, exeo.
god, deus.
goddess, dea.
gone, perf. part. of exigo.
good, bonus.
government, imperium.
grandfather, avus.
grant, concēdo.
great, magnus; so great, tantus.
grievous, gravis.
guard, custos.

H.

*happen, accido, fio.**happy, felix.**harass, vexo.**hasten, maturo, contendo, accuro.**have, habeo.**he says, dicit.**hear, audio.**height, altitudo.**help, juvo.**hem in, contineo.**high, altus.**highest, summus.**hill, collis.**hindrance, impedimentum.**his, his own, suus.**hither, citerior.**hold, habeo, obtineo, teneo;
hold a conference, colloquor.**home, at home, domi; homeward,
domum; from home, domo.**hope, spes.**horse, equus.**hostage, obses.**hour, hora.**house, domus.**hurl, conjicio.**husband, vir.*

I.

*I, ego.**if, si.**implore, imploro.**import, importo.**in, into, in.**incite, facio.**influence, auctoritas.**influenced, adductus.**inform Caesar, Caesarem certiorem facio.**infuse, injicio.**inquire, quaero.**insult, contumelia.**intervene, intersum.**invile, arcesso.*

J.

just, justus.

K.

*keep, teneo; keep from, prohibeo.**kill, caedo, interficio.**kindness, beneficium.**king, rex.**know, scio; know, find out, cognosco; not know, nescio.*

L.

*land, terra.**language, lingua.**large, magnus.**late in the day, multo die.**law, lex, jus.**lay waste, vasto.**lead, duco; lead forth, educo.**leader, dux.**leave, relinquo.**left, sinister.**legate, legatus.**legion, legio.**letter, epistola.*

levy on, **impōno**.
lieutenant, **legātus**.
like, **similis**.
line of battle, **acies**.
little, **paulus**; *a little*, **paulo**.
lofty airs, **spirītus**.
long, for a long time, **diu**; *longer*,
diutius.
look at, **intueor**; *look out for*,
prospicio.
love, **amor**; *to love*, **amo**.

M.

make, **facio**; *make or deliver a
speech*, **oratiōnem habeo**;
make haste, **matūro**; *make
upon*, **infēro**.
man, **vir, homo**.
manner, in such a manner, **ita**.
many, **multi**.
march, iter; *to march*, **iter facere**.
marriage, **matrimonium**; *to give
in marriage, in matrimonium
dare*.
master, become master of, **potior**.
means, by no means, **minīme**; *by
means of*, see 54.
memory, **memoria**.
mile, **mille passuum**.
mind, **ānīmus, mens**.
misfortune, **incommōdum**.
missile, **telum**.
month, **mensis**.
more, **magis, amplius**; *be more
willing*, **malo**.
mother, **mater**.
mountain, **mons**.

move, moveo; *move forward, pro-
moveo*.
much, **multus**.
multitude, **multitūdō**.
murder, caedes; *to murder, cae-
do, occido*.
my, my own, **meus**.

N.

narrow pass, **angustiae**.
nature, **natūra**.
near, circum, ad.
nearest, **proxīmus**.
nearly, fere.
neighbors, finitīmi.
neither — nor, **neque — neque**.
nine, novem.
no, none, nullus.
nobility, nobilitas.
noble, nobilis.
not, non; *not — even, ne —
quidem*.
none the less, nihilo minus.
nothing, nihil.
notice, animadverto.
number, numērus.

O.

obtain, obtineo, consēquor.
occupy, occūpo.
often, saepe.
old, vetus, natus.
on, upon, in.
on account of, propter.
on all sides, undique.
on the day before, pridie.
one, unus.

one by one, **singŭli**.
 one party — the other, **altĕri** —
altĕri.
 opinion, **sententia**.
 opportunity, **potestas, facultas**.
 or, **aut, vel, an**.
 order, give orders, **impĕro**.
 other, **alius**; to each other, from
 each other, **inter se**.
 ought, **oportet, debeo**. See also
LN. LXX.
 our, our own, **noster**.
 out, set out, **proficiscor**; out of,
e, ex.
 overcome **supĕro**.
 own, his own, **suus**; my own,
meus; your own, **tuus, ves-**
ter; their own, **suus**.

P.

pace, **passus**.
 part, **pars**.
 party, one party — the other, **al-**
tĕri — **altĕri**.
 pass the winter, **hiĕmo**.
 peace, **pax**.
 people, **popŭlus**.
 peril, **pericŭlum**.
 persist, **persevēro**.
 persuade, **persuadeo**.
 pitch a camp, **castra pono**.
 place, **locus**; place, put, **pono**.
 plan, **consilium**.
 please, **placeo**.
 pledge, **fides**.
 poor, **pauper**.
 possession, **possessio**; get posses-
 sion of, **potior**.

power, royal power, sovereign pow-
 er, **regnum**.
 practicable, **facilis**.
 practice, **exercitatio**.
 praetor, **praetor**.
 prepare, **compāro**.
 present, be present, **adsum**.
 press, press upon, **premo**.
 prevail upon, **permoveo**.
 prevent, **retineo**.
 price, **pretium**.
 private, **privātus**.
 proceed, **procĕdo**.
 promise, **polliceor**.
 protection, **praesidium**.
 province, **provincia**.
 provisions, **commeātus**.
 pursue, **persĕquor**.
 put off, **confĕro**.

R.

ready, **parātus**.
 rear of an army, **agmen novis-**
simum.
 reason, **causa**.
 recall to mind, **reminiscor**.
 recent, **recens**.
 refinement, **humanitas**.
 reign, **regno**.
 rejoice, **laetor**.
 relief, **subsidium**.
 remain, **maneo**.
 remaining, **reliquus**.
 remember, **memīni**; **memoriā**
teneo.
 remembrance, **memoria**.
 remove, **moveo, removeo**.

*reply, responsum; to reply, re-
spondeo.*

report, enuncio.

resolve, constituo.

*rest, the rest, ceteri; rest of, reli-
quus.*

restrain, retineo, prohibeo.

return, revertor, revento.

revenue, vectigal.

reward, praemium.

rich, dives.

ridge, jugum.

right, dexter.

ripe, maturus.

river, flumen.

road, via.

roul, pello.

route, iter.

royal power, regnum.

ruin, perniciēs.

S.

sad, tristis.

sake, for the sake of, causā.

same, the same, idem.

*satisfaction, give satisfaction, satis-
facio.*

satisfy, satisfacio.

say, dico; he says, dicit.

sea, mare.

see, video.

*seem, videor; it seems good, vidē-
tur.*

seize, occūpo.

select, deligo.

sell, vendo.

senator, senātor.

*send, mitto; send forward, prae-
mitto.*

separate, divido.

set on fire, incendo.

set out, proficiscor.

severely, graviter, vehementer.

ship, navis.

*short, brevis; shortest way or
route, proximum iter.*

show, probō.

shun, vito.

side, this side of, citra.

sides, on all sides, undique.

sight, conspectus.

signal, signum.

since, quum.

single, unus.

sister, soror.

skilful, peritus.

slave, servus.

slavery, servitus.

small, parvus.

*so, ita; with adjectives, tam; so
great, tantus.*

soldier, miles.

*some, some one, aliquis. See
116, a.*

son, filius; son-in-law, gener.

soon, matūre.

*sovereignty, sovereign power, reg-
num.*

Spain, Hispania.

speak, loquor.

*speech, oratio; make, deliver a
speech, orationem habeo.*

stand, sto.

state, civitas.

station, collōco, constituo.

stay, maneo.

storm, expugno.

strengthen, confirmo.

strive, nitor.
such, tantus.
sufficient, sufficiently, satis; with
sufficient ease, satis com-
mōde.
suitable, idoneus, commōdus.
summer, aestas.
summon, voco, convōco.
sunset, occāsus solis.
supply, copia; supplies, res fru-
mentaria, commeātus.
surround, cingo.
survive, supersum.
suspicion, suspicio.
swiftly, celeriter.

T.

take, capture, capio, expugno;
take away, tollo; take to one's
self, sumo.
tarry, moror.
teach, doceo.
ten, decem.
tend, pertineo.
territory, ager, fines.
than, quam.
that, ille.
that, in order that, ut; after verbs
of fearing, nē.
that not, nē; after verbs of fear-
ing, ut.
the same, idem.
there, in that place, ibi.
their, their own, suus.
they, them, see LN. LVIII.,
NOTE 2.
thing, res.
think, puto, abītror.

third, tertius.
this, hic.
those, illi.
three days, triduum.
three hundred, trecenti.
through, per.
throw one's self, se projicere.
till evening, ad vesp̄rum.
time, tempus; for a long time,
diu.
to, ad.
to-day, hodie.
together, come together, convenio.
tongue, lingua.
top of the mountain, summus
mons.
towards, ad; towards the north,
sub septemtrionibus.
tower, turris.
town, oppidum.
trader, mercātor.
train up, instituo.
tribute, stipendium.
troops, copiae.
try, conor.
twenty, viginti.
two days, biduum.

U.

under, sub.
unoccupied, be unoccupied, vaco.
until, dum.
unwilling, be unwilling, nolo.
upon, in.
upper, superior.
urge, hortor.
use, utor; make use of, utor.
useful, utilis.

V.

valor, virtus.

very, valde; very easy, perfacilis; very great, maximus; very is often rendered by ipse: e. g. the very city, urbs ipsa.

vicinity, in or into the vicinity of, ad w. name of town in acc.

victory, victoria.

W.

wage, gero.

wages, merces.

wagon, carrus.

wait, exspecto.

walled town, oppidum.

wanting, be wanting, desum.

war, bellum.

waste, lay waste, vasto.

watch, vigilia; in the third watch, de tertia vigilia.

way, via.

we, nos. See LN. LVII.

wealthy, copiosus.

weapon, telum.

weep, fleo; weeping, flens.

what? quid?

what sort of a? qui? See LN.

LX.

when, quum.

where, ubi.

whether, utrum

which, quod.

while, dum.

who, qui; who? quis?

whole, totus.

why? quid?

wide, latus.

willing, be willing, volo.

win, concilio.

wing of an army, cornu.

winter, pass the winter, hiemo.

winter-quarters, hiberna.

wish, volo.

with, cum.

withdraw, se recipere.

without, sine.

withstand, sustineo.

witness, testis.

woman, mulier.

word, verbum.

worthy, dignus.

wound, vulnus; to wound, vulnero.

write, scribo.

wrong, injuria.

Y.

year, annus.

yet, tamen.

yoke, jugum.

you, tu, vos. See LN. LVII.

your, tuus, vester.

youth, adolescens.

EDUCATIONAL PUBLICATIONS
OF
S. C. GRIGGS & CO., CHICAGO.

RETAIL PRICES.

BACON'S MANUAL OF GESTURE. With 100 Figures, embracing a complete System of Notation, with the Principles of Interpretation, and Selections for Practice. By Professor A. M. BACON. \$1.50.

BOISE'S FIRST LESSONS IN GREEK. Adapted to Goodwin's and Hadley's Larger and Smaller Greek Grammars, and intended as an Introduction for Xenophon's Anabasis. By JAMES R. BOISE, Ph D., LL.D. \$1.25.

BOISE'S FIRST THREE BOOKS OF HOMER'S ILIAD. With Explanatory Notes, and References to the Grammars of Goodwin and Hadley. By JAMES R. BOISE, Ph.D., LL.D. 12mo. Cloth. \$1.00.

BOISE'S FIRST SIX BOOKS OF HOMER'S ILIAD. With Explanatory Notes, and References to the Grammars of Goodwin and Hadley. A new Edition, with Notes revised and largely rewritten. 12mo. Cloth. \$1.50.

BOISE'S EXERCISES IN GREEK SYNTAX. Being Exercises in some of the more difficult Principles of Greek Syntax; with References to the Grammars of Crosby, Curtius, Goodwin, Hadley, Koch, and Kühner. A Sequel to "Jones's Exercises in Greek Prose Composition," and intended for the first year in College. By JAMES R. BOISE, Ph.D., LL.D. \$1.25.

BOISE AND FREEMAN'S SELECTIONS FROM VARIOUS GREEK AUTHORS. For the first year in College, with explanatory Notes, and References to Goodwin's and to Hadley's Larger and Smaller Grammars. \$2.00.

BUCKINGHAM'S ELEMENTS OF THE DIFFERENTIAL AND INTEGRAL CALCULUS. By a New Method, founded on the True System of Sir Isaac Newton, without the use of Infinitesimals or Limits. By Professor C. P. BUCKINGHAM. \$2.00.

CROSS'S ECLECTIC SHORT-HAND. A new system adapted both to general use and to verbatim reporting. Complete in one volume. By J. G. CROSS, A.M. 12mo. Cloth. \$2.00.

D'OOGHE'S DEMOSTHENES ON THE CROWN. With Extracts from the Oration of Æschines against Ctesiphon, and Explanatory Notes. By M. L. D'OOGHE, Ph.D., Professor of Greek, University of Michigan. \$1.50.

JONES'S FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN. Adapted to the Latin Grammars of Allen and Greenough, Andrews and Stoddard, Bartholomew, Bullions and Morris, Gildersleeve, and Harkness, and prepared as an Introduction to Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War. By ELISHA JONES, A.M., Univ'y of Michigan. \$1.25.

Educational Publications of C. S. Griggs & Co.

JONES'S EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION.

With References to the Grammars of Allen and Greenough, Andrews and Stoddard, Bartholomew, Bullions and Morris, Gildersleeve, and Harkness. By ELISHA JONES, A.M. \$1.00.

JONES'S EXERCISES IN GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION.

With References to Hadley's, Goodwin's, and Taylor's-Kühner's Greek Grammars, and a full English-Greek Vocabulary. By ELISHA JONES, A.M. \$1.00.

MAERTZ'S NEW METHOD FOR THE STUDY OF ENGLISH LITERATURE. 12mo. Interleaved. \$1.00.

MAHAN'S MENTAL PHILOSOPHY. By Professor ASA MAHAN, D.D., LL.D. 12mo. Cloth. \$1.50.

MORRIS'S MANUAL OF CLASSICAL LITERATURE.

Comprising Biographical and Critical notices of principal Greek and Roman Authors, Illustrative Extracts from their works, etc. By CHARLES MORRIS 12mo. Cloth. \$1.75.

PETERSON'S NORWEGIAN-DANISH GRAMMAR AND READER. With a Vocabulary, designed for American Students of the Norwegian-Danish Language. By Professor C. I. P. PETERSON. \$1.25.

RAYMOND'S ORATOR'S MANUAL. A practical and philosophical treatise on Vocal Culture, Emphasis, and Gesture, together with selections for Declamation and Reading. Designed as a text-book for schools and colleges, and for public speakers and readers who are obliged to study without an instructor. By G. L. RAYMOND, M.A., Professor of Oratory, Princeton College. 12mo. Cloth. \$1.50.

ROBERT'S RULES OF ORDER FOR DELIBERATIVE ASSEMBLIES. By Major H. M. ROBERT. 75 cts.

SAWYER'S PRACTICAL GERMAN GRAMMAR. By W. C. SAWYER, Ph.D., Professor of German, Wisconsin State Normal School, Oshkosh. \$1.00.

STEVENS'S SELECT ORATIONS OF LYSIAS. With Introductions, and Explanatory Notes. By Professor W. A. STEVENS, A.M. \$1.50.

WELSH'S DEVELOPMENT OF ENGLISH LITERATURE AND LANGUAGE. By Professor A. H. WELSH. 2 vols. Crown octavo. Cloth. \$5.00.

WELSH'S GEOMETRY. Ready July, 1883.

ZUR BRÜCKE'S GERMAN WITHOUT GRAMMAR OR DICTIONARY; or, A Guide to Learning and Teaching the German Language, according to the Pestalozzian method of teaching, by Object Lessons. Part I. 75 cts.

ZUR BRÜCKE'S GERMAN, ETC. PART II. Cloth. \$1.25.

*** *Descriptive circulars furnished on application.*

*** *Books will be mailed post-paid on receipt of price by the publishers.*

